kiswahili Self - Instuction Manual







Hosted for free on livelingua.com

FOREWORD

This Peace Corps Language Training Curriculum is Competency Based, that is, it describes what the Learners will be able to do with the language. They actually study the language used by the Native speakers to express themselves in a variety of situations. Since Peace Corps Volunteers need to be able to function immediately in a new language and culture a Competency Based Curriculum includes the most essential language elements to survive in a new culture.

The curriculum is divided into topic areas based on the immediate needs of PCVs from their arrival in the host country and initial meetings with host country nationals to settling into housing, shopping in local markets, working in schools and dealing with emergency situations.

To compliment the emphasis of communicative ability, this manual in its format flows from a series of dialogues (that are translated) to vocabulary lists (for review of the vocabulary used in the dialogues) to grammar explanation, to exercises for comprehension check and knowledge of grammar. Last but not least cultural explanation to integrate the culture into the language. There is also a self-evaluation part for the learner to assess his new progress in learning and to give feedback to the trainer.

Topics are ordered based on the most common needs of a Learner. Some topics are spiralled, that is, they are re-introduced at various points in the curriculum. For example a volunteer learns the vocabulary of food to use at the table with his host family in the first food topic. Food is then introduced again in the context of shopping for food in the host country and finally food is studied in a restaurant context.

This manual is divided into five sections. The first section deals with survival and social skills competencies all covered in nineteen lessons. The 2nd section deals specifically with Technical Competencies for the volunteer job assignment. Section three has answers to all the exercises in the manual; the fourth section contains the glossary for quick vocabulary reference and finally the grammar chart that summarizes the Kiswahili Grammar just in a single page.

It is our hope that this manual will serve as a good reinforcement of your lessons in class as an appropriate tool for reference and help out of class; in your efforts to learn Kiswahili for communication. Good luck.

This manual is a result of the hardwork of all the Language and Cross-Cultural Facilitators of U.S Peace Corps Kenya.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

INTRODUCTION

PRONUNCIATION:

VOWELS:

Kiswahili uses same letters for the vowels as in EnglishL: **A, E, I, O** and **U** but the pronunciation is entirely different

You will find that:
A is pronunced like the ***"a"*** in father, but not quite so deep.

E is like the ***a*** in say, without the final sound we give it in English by slightly closing the mouth.
I is like the ***e*** in be. When ustressed it is the same sound as we make at the end of the English words say or **i.**

O is like the **o** in hoe before we begin to close the mouth at the end. Very much like the first ***o*** in Oho!.
U is like the ***oo*** in too; it is never like the ***u*** in use unless preceded by ***y***

There is no difficulty in pronouncing the Swahili ***I*** or u, and if one does get the ***a*** a little too deep it does not greatly matter. But much good Swahili is spoilt by pronuncing the ***e*** and ***o*** in the English way, and it is worth taking a little trouble to get the right sound that is, to avoid closing the mouth towards the end.

Note that the sound of the vowel is the same in an unstressed syllable as in a stressed one. Do not pronounce baba,(father), as barber, or paka,(cat), as parker. The second syllable is pronounced lightly, but it should have the ***a*** sound and not ***er.***

If we say the Swahili vowels in order, ***a, e, i, o, u***, we shall notice that the mouth position of ***e*** is intermediate between that of ***a*** and ***i***. This enables us to understand why ***a*** and ***i*** sometimes combine to form ***e.***

Except for a few instances of combining in this way which will be noticed when we come to them, when two Swahili vowels come together each keeps its own sound;

Bei, (price), pronounced as in English we pronounce bay; tai eagle, as the English tie; au, or as the cow.

When the two vowels come together in the middle of the word where one takes the stress, the fact that they are pronounced separately is more easily noticed:

As each vowel has its own sound, it forms a separate syllable, and the words can be divided be-i, ta-i, ta-u-ni, fa-i-da.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

When two similar vowels come together they are pronounced as one long vowel. This is nearly always due to the loss of a consonant, usually I, between them, and thre were originally two separate syllables: e.g. kaa (sit down); juu,(above).

syllables

All Swahili syllables are "open" that is, they end with a vowel. Notice how these words are divided. Fa-nya (to do) fu-nza; teach; fi-ki-ri; think, sa-me-he; forgive. The stress always comes on the last syllable but one. There are one or two Arabic words, such as ***lazima, -must, -thumuni,- fifty cents,*** which are expceptions to this rule, but they can be, and often are, made to conform to it.

CONSONANTS:

The consonants do not vary in sound, thus we get:

B as in 'bad' e.g. baba (father)
C is only found together with ***H*** as ***CH***, and is pronounced as in 'each' e.g.chache (a few)
D as in 'do' e.g. dada (sister)
F as in 'far' e.g. futa (wipe)
G as in 'gone' e.g. gogo (a log) It is never soft as in 'germ'.
H as in 'hat' e.g hali (condation)
J as in 'John' e.g. jambo (hello) In practice it is slightly different, not having the '***Dj*** ' Sound but rather a '***DY***' sound.
K as in 'kid' e.g. kaka (a brother)
L as in 'log' e.g. lala (sleep).
M as in 'man' e.g mama (a mother)
If a consonat occurs without a vowel at the beginning of a word it is generally given a syllable of its own, e.g. mtoto (a child) m-to-to.
P as in 'pot' e.g.papa (a shark)
R as in 'rat' e.g. roho (soul)
S as in 'soap' e.g. sisi (we/us)
T as in 'tame' e.g. tatu (three)
V as in 'very' e.g. vita (war)
W as in 'wide' e.g. watu (people)
Y as in 'you' e.g. yaya (a nanny) Never as in 'very'
Z as in 'zoo' e.g. zamu (a turn, bout).

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

A BRIEF HISTORY OF KISWAHILI

Whose Language Is It?

Kiswahili is the most widely spoken language in East Africa, with at least 60 million speakers. It is said to be one of the twelve great languages of the world. Only a minority speaks Kiswahili as their mother tongue. Most speak it as a second, third or even fourth language.

Kiswahili originated at the coast as a result of the intermarriage between ***Bantu*** and Arabs. Bantu is composed of a number of ethnic groups. The name Bantu comes from the word "people" found in various forms - "***Bantu - Watu,*** watu etc. - in many of the languages of this family.

The three important dialects are ***Kiunguja*** - the Swahili of Zanzibar, ***Kimuita,*** - the Swahili of Mombasa and ***Kiamu*** spoken on the island of Lamu and the Coast opposite to it.

N.B. IT PLAYS, AN IMPORTANT ROLE AS A 'LINGUA FRANCA' IN EAST AFRICA.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TABLE OF CONTENT

LESSON	TOPIC	GRAMMAR	PAGE
1	*Salamu – Greetings*	*Interrogatives, Connectors, adjectives*	
2	Kujijulisha I – Introduction I	*Subject prefixes for m/wa class, present tense Na, possesive pronouns (-angu, -ako, -ake etc.)*	
3	Kujijulisha II – Introduction II	*Interogatives, preposations, use of 'kwa'and demonstrative pronouns.*	
4	Unafanya nini? - What do you do?	*Personal pronouns (mimi, wewe, yeye), verb to be "NI"*	
5	Chakula – Food	*Past tense "li", and future tense "ta", adjectives and monosylabic verbs.*	
6	Kuhesabu, pesa na bei – Counting, money and prices	*Adjectives (numbers) and more interogatives.*	
7	Hotelini – Restaurant	*Simple imperatives, "Me" tense*	
8	Kununua – Shopping	*"nge" tense*	
9	Sasa ni saa ngapi? – What time is it?	*Interogative 'ngapi', 'Hu'tense and "Ka" narrative.*	
10	Siku za wiki – Days of the week.	*The verb to be "kuwa", general relatives e.g. ujao, ijayo e.t.c.*	
11	Jamaa – Family	*Demonstratives in M/WA class, Object infixes for M/WA class, possessive pronouns (-angu, -ako, -ake)*	
12	Maisha – Life	*The adverb of time 'PO', "KI" condational and "Ki " continuos tense.*	
13	Kazi – Professions	*Relative pronoun 'amba', verb to be 'kuwa*	
14	Kupika – Cooking	*Imperatives, Verb duplication*	
15	Kuuliza njia – Directions	*Prepositions, locative 'ko'.*	
16	Afya – Health	*Passive verbs*	
17	Hali ya hewa – Weather	*More adjectives*	
18	Nguo na rangi – Clothes and Colours	*More adjectives (colors)*	
19	Mazoezi zaidi – More exercises	*All the grammar used in this book.*	
20	Glossary		

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 1

TOPIC: GREETINGS

COMPETENCY: EXCHANGE GREETINGS APPROPRIATELY



DIALOGUE 1 - MAZUNGUMZO 1

Oloo:	Habari yako?	***How are you?***
Kim:	Nzuri sana.	***Very good.***
Oloo:	Habari za nyumbani?	***How is home?***
Kim:	Nzuri pia.	***Good too.***

DIALOGUE 2 - MAZUNGUMZO 2

Ruth:	Hujambo bibi?	***Are you well madam?***
Mary:	Sijambo mama.	***I am well mother.***
Ruth:	Habari za asubuhi?	***Good morning?***
Mary:	Salama / njema/ nzuri.	***Fine/good/okay.***
Ruth:	Habari za kazi?	***How is work?***
Mary:	Si mbaya.	***Not bad***

DIALOGUE 3 - MAZUNGUMZO

Gitahi:	Sasa?	***What's up?***
Henry:	Fiti, vipi mambo?	***Okay; how are things?***
Gitahi:	Sawa tu. Sema?	***Just okay, what do you say?***
Henry:	Poa.	***Cool.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

NOUNS
M - / WA-

Umoja -singular	Wingi - Plural	Kiingereza - English
Mama	Mama	Mother
Bibi	Mabibi	Lady / Madam
Bwana	Mabwana	Gentleman
Mzee	Wazee	Old man
Baba	Baba	Father
Watoto	Watoto	Child

N CLASS

Umoja - singular	Wingi - Plural	Kingereza - English
Nyumbani	Nyumbani	Home
Asubuhi	Asubuhi	Morning
Mchana	Mchana	Noon/ afternoon
Jioni	Jioni	Evening
Usiku	Usiku	Night
Kazi	Kazi	Job / work

MA CLASS

Umoja- singular	Wingi - Plural	Kingereza - English
Jambo	Mambo	Thing / issue

ADJECTIVES

Kiswahili	-	English
-ema		fine, good
-zuri	-	good
salama	-	peaceful
-baya	-	bad
sawa	-	okay
poa	-	cool
fiti	-	fit

VERBS

Sema - Say/speak

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Maelezo ya Sarufi - Grammar Explanation
In this lesson the interrogative gani, vipi, sasa, have been used. For example 'habari gani? This literally translates to which 'news do you have?' vipi also means how as in the case of "vipi sasa?" "How is it now?"

The connectors used 'ya" in the singular form and 'za' in the plural form as in "Habari ya asubuhi" and "Habari za asubuhi" means 'news of morning.

A few adjectives have been used e.g. Nzuri and Njema. Nzuri is derived from the stem - -zuri, meaning good or fine. Njema is derived from the stem -ema and it also means good or fine.

MAZOEZI - EXERCISES

ZOEZI LA KWANZA (EXERCISE ONE)



Andika majibu sahihi ya salamu zifuatazo (write the appropriate responses to the following greetings).

1. Habari yako? _____
2. Habari zenu? _____
3. Hujambo? _____
4. Hamjambo?_____
5. Habari gani? _____
6. Sasa? _____
7. Vipi? _____
8. Shikamoo? _____
9. Habari za nyumbani? _____
10. Habari za kazi? _____

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE TW0



Fill in the gaps - Jaza Pengo

A. Habari
B. Nzuri
A. .....
B. Sijambo.
A. Habari za nyumbani?
B. .....

A. .....

B. Hatujambo?

A_____. .
B. Si mbaya
A. Vipi mambo?
B. .....
A. Kwaheri
B. .....

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI III - EXERCISE III



Write the questions for the following responses.
Andika maswali ya majibu haya

1. **.....** Njema sana
2. ..... Hatujambo.
3. .....Salama sana.
4. ..... Fiti sana.
5. .....Sijambo bibi.
6. ..... Nzuri sana

Cultural Note:

a) Greetings are an important part of Kenyan culture, as a whole Shaking hands is very common, offering both hands one over the other denotes respect. Asking about weather, children, and work parents is part of greetings.

b) Mama: a title of respect for married women, whether they are mothers or not. However, it is difficult to identify married from unmarried women. Mama is generally used as a term of respect for all middle aged woman.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 2

TOPIC: INTRODUCTION 1 - KUJIJULISHA 1

COMPETENCY: INTRODUCE SELF AND FRIENDS



MAZUNGUMZO 1 - DIALOGUE 1

Awuor:	Habari gani?	***What's the news?***
Nzioka:	Nzuri sana, Habari yako?	***Very good, how are you?***
Awuor:	Salama sana, Jina langu ni Awuor, na wewe je?	***Very fine, my name is Awuor and You?***
Nzioka:	Jina langu ni Nzioka.	***My name is Nzioka.***
Awuor:	Asante kwa kukujua.	***Thanks for knowing you.***
Nzioka:	Asante sana pia.	***Thanks a lot also.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAZUNGUMZO II - DIALOGUE II

Gitahi:	Hujambo bwana?	***Are you well gentleman/sir?***
Scott:	Sijambo.	***Yes I am well.***
Gitahi:	Habari za kazi?	***How is work?***
Scott:	Nzuri sana.	***Very Good.***
Gitahi:	Unaitwa nani?	***You are called who?***
Scott:	Ninaitwa Scott.	***I am called Scott.***
Gitahi:	Unatoka wapi Scott?	***Where do you come from?***
Scott:	Ninatoka Amerika.	***I come from America?***
Gitahi:	Wapi katika Amerika?	***Where in America?***
Scott	Jimbo la Illinois mji wa Chicago.	***State of Illinois, City of Chicago***
Gitahi:	Asante Sana	***Thank you very much***

MAZUNGUMZO III - DIALOGUE III

Nyoboke:	Sasa?	***What's up?***
Nanjala:	Fiti sana.	***Very okay***
Nyaboke:	Unaitwaje?	***How are you called?***
Nanjala:	Ninaitwa Nanjala.	***I am called Nanjala.***
Nyaboke:	Unatoka wapi Nanjala?	***Where do you come from Nanjala?***
Nanajala:	Ninatoka mkoa wa Magharibi, Wilaya ya Kakamega. Na wewe?	***I come from Western Province Kakamega District, and you?***
Nyaboke:	Ninatoka mkoa wa Nyanza, wilaya ya Nyamira.	***I come from Nyanza Province Nyamira District.***
Nanjala:	Asante na kwaheri ya kuonana.	***Thank you and Goodbye till we see each other.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MISAMIATI-VOCABULARY

NOUNS

M/WA CLASS

Umoja - Singular	Wingi – Plural	Kiingereza - English
Bibi	Mabibi	Lady / Madam
Bwana	Mabwana	Gentleman / Sir

N - CLASS

Nchi	Nchi	Country
Wilaya	Wilaya	District

MA CLASS

Jina	Majina	Name
Jimbo	Majimbo	State

M/MI CLASS

Mji	Miji	City / Town
Mkoa	Mikoa	Province

VERBS

- itwa	To be called
- toka	To come from
- jua	To know

Expressions

Asante	Asanteni	Thank you
Kwaheri	Kwaherini	Goodbye

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

1. In Swahili, the subject prefixes of noun classes are used both in verbs and in many other constructions. For example, the M/WA class subject prefixes are as follows:

NI - Meaning 'I' which refers to first person singular.
U - Meaning 'You' which refers to second person singular.
A - Meaning 'He/she' which refers to third person singular
TU - Meaning 'We" which refers to first person plural
M - Meaning "You" which refers to second person plural.
WA- Meaning "they" which refers to third person plural.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Affirmative	**Negative**
Ninatoka	Sitoki
Unatoka	Hutoki
Anatoka	Hatoki

2.The "Na" as in ninatoka, unatoka and anatoka, is a present tense marker. The action is going on now or is a usual condition. In the negative present tense the '**Na**' tense marker is dropped and the tense is marked by a change of the final vowel. If the verb ends in "a", it changes to "i" in the negative. Verbs that end with vowels other than 'a' remain the same.

Kwa mfano - for example

Affirmative	**Negative**	***English***
Ninatoka	Sitoki	***I come from / I am coming from***
Unatoka	Hutoki	***You (sing.) come from*** ***You are coming from.***
Anatoka	Hatoki	***He she comes from/*** ***He/she is coming from.***
Tunatoka	Hatutoki	***We come from /*** ***We are coming fom***
Mnatoka	Hamtoki	***You (plural) come from*** ***You (plural) are coming from.***
Wanatoka	Hawatoki	***They come from /*** ***They are coming from***

3. Stems of the Swahili Possessive Pronouns:

- Angu, -ako, ake. These stems are conjugated according to the noun class being used. For example, a noun in the 'Ma' class like jina we get:

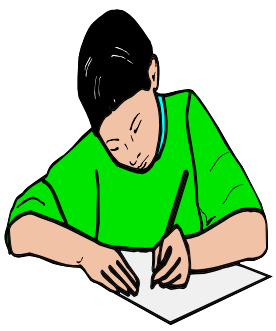
Jina langu	-	***My name.***
Jina lako	-	***Your name***
Jina Lake	-	***His/her name***
Majina yetu	-	***Our names***
Majina yenu		***Your (plural) names***
Majina yao	-	***Their names.***

4. "Je as in unaitwaje, anaitwaje etc.
This is an interrogative marker meaning "How" or "what" and can be suffixed to any verb.

Example:	Unaonaje?	***How do you see?***
	Ulilalaje?	***How did you sleep?***
	Unasemaje?	***How do you say? / What are you saying.***
	Wanakujaje?	***How do they come? / How are they coming.***

- EXERCISES

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE



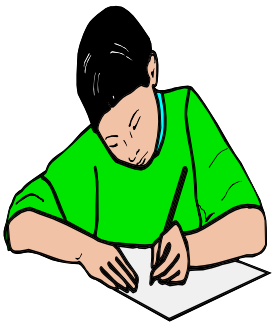
Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Jibu Maswali haya: (Answer these questions)

1. Jina lako ni nani? _____
2. Rafiki yako katika Kenya anaitwa nani? _____
3. Baba yako anaitwaje? _____
4. Mama yako anaitwa nani? _____
5. Unatoka jimbo gani? _____
6. Rafiki yako anatoka wapi? _____

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE TWO

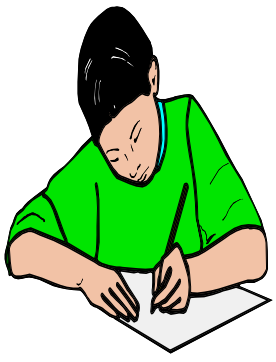
Kanusha sentensi hizi - turn these sentences to negative.



1. Jina langu ni Brian. _____
2. Ninaitwa Maria. _____
3. Tunatoka nchi ya Japani. _____
4. Anatoka jimbo la California. _____
5. Wanatoka mji wa Nairobi. _____

ZOEZI LA TATU - EXERCISE THREE.

Tunga Maswali ya majibu haya - Create questions to the following answers:



1. Jina lake ni Fatuma_____.
2. Anatoka Tanzania_____.
3. Ndiyo, wanajua Kiswahili_____.
4. Wanatoka Mombasa_____.
5. Sitoki mkoa wa magharibi_____.

Cultural Notes:

Usually when two people are walking and they meet a friend he/she must greet both of them and the friend is supposed to introduce this other person to make him or her not feel out of place. If the other person is not introduced, it makes him or her feel very uncomfortable since he/she doesn't know whether to stand there, aside or even go away.

We do not refer to friends of the opposite sex as friends but as people we work with, colleague mates etc.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 3

TOPIC: INTRODUCTION II - KUJIJULISHA II

COMPETENCY: TELL WHERE THEY AND THEIR FRIENDS STAY.



MAZUNGUMZO ONE - DIALOGUE ONE

Simon:	Habari za leo bibi Gina?	***What's the news today madamme Gina?***
Gina:	Nzuri sana bwana Simon. Habari yako?	***Very fine mister Simon. How are you?***
Simon:	Nzuri pia. Unatoka nchi gani?	***Fine too. Which country do you come from?***
Gina:	Ninatoka nchi ya Amerika. Na wewe?	***I come from America, and you?***
Simon :	Ninatoka nchi ya Amerika, jimbo la Illinois.	***I come from the country of America, State of Illionois.***
Gina:	Na hapa Loitokitok unakaa wapi?	***And here in Loitokitok, where do you stay?***
Simon:	Hapa Loitokitok ninakaa Nkama . Na wewe unakaa wapi?	***Here in Loitokitok I stay in Nkama. And you, where do you stay?***
Gina:	Ninakaa Bondeni.	***I stay in Bondeni.***
Simon:	Asante sana, kwaheri.	***Thank you very much. Goodbye***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAZUNGUMZO II - DIALOGUE IWO

Gloria:	Hujambo Florence?	***Hallo Florence.***
Florence:	Sijambo. Habari yako?	***Hallo. How are you?***
Gloria:	Nzuri. Huyu ni rafiki yangu anaitwa Jean.	***Very good. This is my friend. She's called Jean.***
Florence:	Oh, habari Jean?	***Oh how are you Jean?***
Jean:	Salama sana.	***Very fine***
Gloria:	Jean anatoka jimbo la California, lakini sasa anakaa Forest kwa jamaa ya James kilonzo.	***Jean comes from the State of California but now she stays in Forest with the family of James Kilonzo.***
Florence:	Unaenda darasani vipi? kila Asubuhi?	***How do you go to class every morning?***
Jean:	Kila asubuhi ninaenda darasani kwa miguu.	***Every morning I go to class On foot..***
Florence:	Na jioni unarudi nyumbani vipi?	***And in the evening how do you return home?***
Jean:	Jioni ninarudi kwa miguu pia.	***In the evening I return by foot also.***
Florence:	Asante kwa kukujua.	***Thank you for knowing you.***
Jean:	Asante pia.	***Thank you,***

VOCABULARY - MISAMIATI

NOUNS

M-/WA- CLASS

Umoja - Singular	Plural - Plural	English
Rafiki	Marafiki	Friend(s)

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

N CLASS

Shule	Shule	School(s)
Baiskeli	Baiskeli	Bicylce(s)
Matatu	Matatu	Matatu
Asubuhi	Asubuhi	Morning
Mchana	Mchana	Noon
Jioni	Jioni	Evening

MA CLASS

Jimbo	Majimbo	State(s)
Darasa	Madarasa	Class(es)
Kanisa	Makanisa	Church(es)

M/MI CLASS

Mguu	Miguu	Feet, legs

VERBS:

-kaa--------- stay
-rudi-------- return
-ishi--------- live
-enda-------- go
-toka---------- come from
Kuja---------- come
-jua---------- know

DEMONSTRATIVES

Huyu - This
Huyo - That
Yule - That over there
Hapa - Here
Hapo - There
Pale - Over there

INTEROGATIVES

Wapi? - Where?
Vipi? - How?
Gani? - Which?

EXPRESSIONS

Pia - Too, Also
Kila - Every

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

1. In this lesson we see the suffix "-ni" serving as a preposition with several meanings e.g.

Nyumba	(house)	-	Nyumbani (to/at/in/on the house/ home)
Shule	(school)	-	Shuleni (to/at/in/on the school)
Darasa	(class)	-	Darasani (to/at/in/on the class)
Kanisa	(church)	-	Kanisani (to/at/in/on the church).
Mji	(city)	-	Mjini (to/at/in/on the city).

2) a) The preposition **-kwa-** is used in a number of ways and contexts. In this lesson it serves as an instrumental preposition meaning 'by' e.g.

Ninaenda shule kwa matatu. - ***I go to school by matatu.***
Ninarudi nyumbani kwa miguu - ***I return home by foot.***

b) "**kwa**" has also been used to mean "with" e.g.
Ninakaa kwa jamaa ya James Kilonzo ***I stay with the family of James Kilonzo.***

c) "**Kwa**" is also used to indicate -a place of i.e. somebody's place, house, home, e.g
Ninakaa kwa Kilonzo - ***I stay at Kilonzo's house.***

The other grammar that has been used in this lesson is the demonstrative pronouns of the **M/WA** and **N CIASS.**

i.e.	Huyu	-	***This***	Hapa	- ***Here***
	Huyo	-	***That***	Hapo	- ***There***
	Yule	-	***That over there***	Pale	- ***Over there.***

Huyu ni rafiki yangu. ***This is my friend***
Ninakaa hapa Kitui ***I stay here in Kitui.***

More explanation on demonstrative pronouns will be given in depth at a later lesson.

MAZOEZI - EXERCISES

ZOEZI 1 - EXERCISE ONE

JIBU MASWALI HAYA - ANSWER THESE QUESTIONS:



1. Unakaa wapi? _____
2. Rafiki yako anakaa wapi? _____
3. Unakuja darasani vipi kila asubuhi? _____

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

4. Rafiki yako anenda nyumbani vipi? _____

5. Mnarudi nyumbani kwa miguu kila jioni? _____

6. Mnakuja Out ward bound vipi? _____

7. Katika Amerika unakaa wapi? _____

8. Wazazi wako wanakaa wapi? _____

ZOEZI II - EXERCISE II

Kanusha sentensi hizi. **Turn these sentenses into negatives.**



1.Ninakaa Customs _____
_____

2. Anaenda dukani.
_____

3. Tunaenda nyumbani. _____

4. Wanarudi nyumbani kwa motokaa. _____

5. Ninakaa kwa jamaa ya Joseph. _____

6. Kila asubuhi tunakuja kwa mafunzo kwa miguu. _____

7. Mary anaishi Kamkunji. _____

8. Wakristo wanaenda kanisani. _____

9. Tunaenda Mombasa kwa gari la Moshi. _____

10.Wanaenda kanisani kwa miguu. _____

Cultutal Note:
In Kenyan culture, there is a great distinction between one's house and home. Most people have houses where they work but also have original homeland, which is the ancestral land.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 4

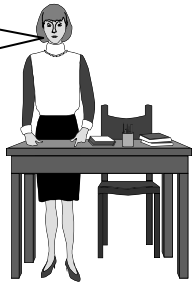
TOPIC: WHAT YOU DO: UNAFANYA NINI

COMPETENCY: TELL THEIR NATIONALITY AND WHAT THEY AND THEIR FRIENDS DO.

Mimi ni askari



Mimi ni mwalimu



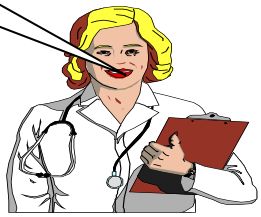
Mimi ni fundi wa magari



Mimi ni Dereva



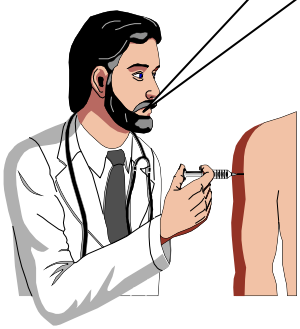
Mimi ni muuguzi



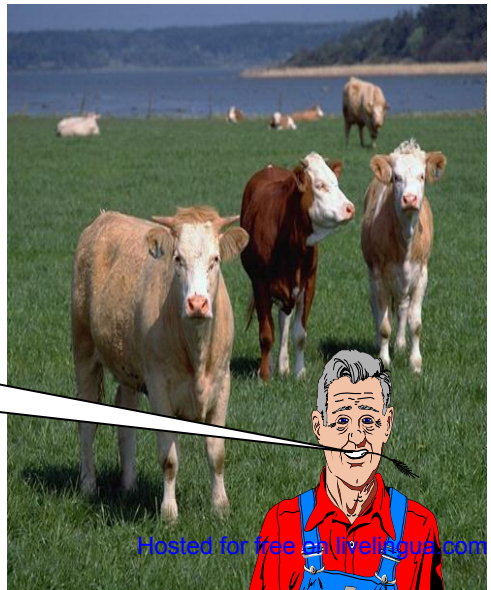
Mimi ni mpishi



Mimi ni daktari.



Mimi ni mkulima wa ng'ombe wa maziwa



Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAZUNGUMZO 1	DIALOGUE ONE

Kamau:	Habari yako?	***How are you?***
John:	Nzuri sana. Na wewe?	***Very good and you?***
Kamau:	Salama sana.Unatoka wapi?	***Very fine. Where do you come from?***
John:	Ninatoka Amerika.	***I come from Amerika.***
Kamau:	Unafanya nini hapa Kenya?	***What do you do here in Kenya?***
John:	Mimi ni Mshauri wa afya ya Uma.	***I am a public health advisor.***
Kamau:	Unashauri nini?	***What do you advice?***
John:	Ninashauri juu ya umuhimu wa afya bora kwa jamii.	***I advice importance of better health to communit.y***
Kamau:	Na unafanya nini hapa Loitokitok?	***And what do you do Loitokitok?***
John:	Hapa Loitokotok ninajifunza Kiswahili na utamaduni wa Kenya. Na wewe?	***Here in Loitokitok I am learning Kiswahili and Kenyan culture. And* And *you?***
Kamau:	Mimi ninakaa hapa Loitokitok na mimi ni mwalimu wa hesabu katika Mombasa.	***I stay here in Loitokitok and I am a maths teacher in Mombasa.***
John:	Sawa Sawa.	***Okay.***
Kamau:	Asante sana	***Thank you very much.***

MAZUNGUMZO 2	DIALOGUE TWO

Atieno:	Habari yako?	***How are you?***
Mary:	Nzuri sana.	***Very good.***
Atieno:	Unatoka wapi?	***Where do you come from?***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mary:	Ninatoka Amerika	***I come from America.***
Atieno:	Wewe ni Mwamerika?	***Are you an American?***
Mary:	Ndiyo, Na wewe ni kabila gani?	***Yes, and what tribe are you?***
Atieno:	Mimi ni Mluo.	***I am a Luo.***
Mary:	Unafanya kazi gani?	***What do you do?***
Atieno:	Mimi ni Fundi wa Nguo. Na wewe?	***I am a Tailor.*** ***And you***
Mary:	Mimi ni Mshauri wa Biashara ndogo ndogo.	***I am a Small Business Advisor.***
Atieno:	Asante sana.	***Thank you very much.***
Mary:	Karibu sana.	***You are very welcome.***

MSAMIATI	VOCABULARY

NOUNS
N CLASS

Hesabu Biashara ndogo	Hesabu Biashara ndogo	Mathematics Small Business

M/WA

Umoja **Singular**	**Wingi** **Plural**	**English**
Mwalimu	Walimu	Teacher(s)
Mshauri	Washauri	Advisor(s)
Mwanafunzi	Wanafunzi	Student(s)
Mwafirika	Waafrika	African(s)
Mwamerika	Waamerika	American(s)
Mkikuyu	Wakikuyu	Kikuyu(s)
Mluo	Waluo	Luo(s)
Mkamba	Wakamba	Kamba(s)
Mluhya	Waluhya	Luhya(s)

U CLASS

Utamaduni	Tamaduni	Culture

VERBS

Fanya	Do
Fundisha	Teach
Jifunza	Learn

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION	MAELEZO YA SARUFI

1. The personal pronouns (mimi, wewe, yeye) are used in addition to the subject prefixes. They serve to put emphasis e.g.

   Mimi ninatoka Kenya.
   Yeye anaitwa Mary.

2. VERB "TO BE" "NI"
   This is equivalent to English -is, am and is: for example:

Mimi ni mwalimu.	-	***I am a teacher.***
Wewe ni mwanfunzi.	-	***You are a student.***
Yeye ni Mkenya.	-	***He/she is a Kenyan.***

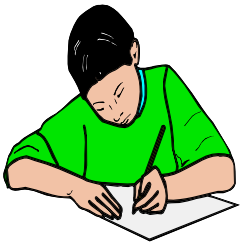
When negating we replace "Ni" with "Si" for example:

Mimi ni mwalimu.	Mimi si mwalimu.
Wewe ni mwanafunzi.	Wewe si mwanafunzi.
Yeye ni mkenya.	Yeye si mkenya.

MAZOEZI - EXERCISES

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE I

Jibu Maswali yafuatayo: (Answer the following questions).



1. Unafanya nini hapa Kenya? _____

2. Unaishi wapi? _____

3. Rafiki yako, anakaa wapi na anafanya kazi gani?
_____

ZOEZI LA PILI (EXERCISE 2)

Kanusha Sentensi zifuatazo (Turn the following sentences into negative

1. Mimi ni mwalimu _____

2. Wewe ni mwanafunzi _____

3. Yeye ni mshauri wa biashara ndogo _____

4. Mimi ninakaa katika Kitui. _____

5. Yeye anafundisha Hesabu _____

6. Wewe unajifunza Kiswahili _____

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI LA TATU (EXERCISE 3)

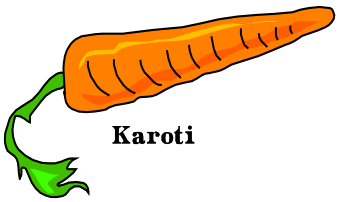
Cultural Note:

People do not respond very well when asked which tribe they come from. Once someone tells you where he/she comes from i.e. their home, you outomatically tell which tribe they belong. It has become very sensitive to ask people their tribes.

LESSON 5

TOPIC: FOOD

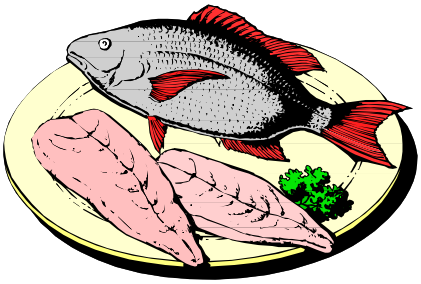
COMPETENCY: EXPRESS LIKES AND DISLIKES IN FOOD



Karoti



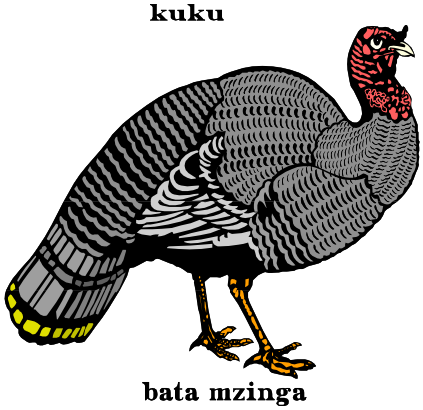
kahawa



Samaki



kuku



bata mzinga



soda



mkate

Hosted for free on livelingua.com



pilipili hoho





tofaa

MAZUNGUMZO YA KWANZA - DIALOGUE ONE

Maria: Hujambo Ndungu?

How are you Ndungu?

Ndungu:	Sijambo Maria, na wewe?	***I am fine and you?***
Maria:	Salama, unapenda kula chakula gani?	***Fine, what do you like to eat?***
Ndungu:	Ninapenda kula ugali, sukumawiki na nyama choma.	***I like to eat ugali, kales and Roast meat.***
Maria:	Unapenda kula viazi?	***Do you like to eat potatoes?***
Ndungu:	Ndiyo, na weweje?	***Yes, and you?***
Maria:	Mimi pia ninapenda kula viazi.	***Me too I like to eat potatoes.***
Ndungu:	Unapenda kunywa vinywaji gani?	***what drinks do you like?***
Maria:	Ninapenda kunywa chai, soda na uji, sipendi kunywa pombe.	***I like to drink tea, soda and porridge. I don't like beer.***

MAZUNGUMZO YA PILI - DIALOGUE TWO

Maria:	Habari yako Ndungu?	***How are you Ndungu?***
Ndungu:	Nzuri sana. Naweweje?	***I am very fine, and you?***
Maria:	Salama tu. Karibu kwa chakula cha mchana.	***Just fine. Welcome for lunch.***
Ndungu:	Umepika chakula gani?	***What food have you cooked?***
Maria:	Nimepika ugali na nyama ya mbuzi.	***I have cooked ugali and goat meat.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Ndungu:	Hapana sipendi kula nyama ya mbuzi.	***No thanks. I don't like goat meat.***
Maria:	Jana ulikula chakula gani?	***What did you eat yesterday?***
Ndungu:	Nilikula wali na mboga. Na weweje?	***I ate cooked rice and vegetables.*** ***And you?***
Maria:	Nilikula chapati na samaki	***I ate chapati and fish.***
Ndungu:	Unapenda samaki?	***Do you like fish?***
Maria:	Hapana sipendi samaki.	**No I don't like fish.**

MAZUNGUMZO YA TATU - DAILOGUE THREE

Maria:	Vipi Ndungu?	***How are you Ndungu?***
Ndungu:	Safi sana.	***Very fine / cool***
Maria:	Karibu chai.	***Welcome for tea.***
Ndungu:	Hapana asante.Sipendi kunywa chai asubuhi.	***No thank.You. I don't drink tea in the morning.***
Maria:	Kuna maji ya machungwa.	***There is orange juice.***
Ndungu:	Asante. Ninapenda maji ya machungwa.	***Thanks I like orange juice very much.***
Maria:	nataka baridi?	***Do you want it cold?***
Ndungu:	Ndiyo	***Yes.***
Maria:	Haya chukua.	***Ok take.***
Ndungu:	Asante sana.	***Thank you very much***
Maria:	Karibu.	***Welcome.***

MAZUNGUMZO YA NNE - DIALOGUE FOUR

Moses:	Hujambo mama?	***How are you mama?***
Mama:	Sijambo.	***I am fine.***
Moses:	Kesho utapika nini?	***What will you cook tommorrow?***
Mama:	Nitapika ugali na kuku.	***I will cook ugali and chicken.***
Moses:	Vizuri sana ninapenda kula ugali na kuku.	***Very good I like to eat ugali and chiken.***
Mama:	Haya karibu nyumbani.	***Ok welcome home.***
Moses :	Utapika kwa chakula cha mchana au jioni?	***Will you cook for lunch or super?***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mama: Kwa chakula cha mchana. ***For lunch.***
Moses: Haya nitakuja. ***Ok I will come.***

Mama: Karibu. ***Welcome.***

MSAMIATI	**VOCABULARY**

NOUNS
Ki - Vi

Umoja - singular	**Wingi - Plural**	**English**
Kinywaji	Vinywaji	Drink
Chakula	Vyakula	Food
Kiazi	Viazi	Potato
Kitunguu	Vitunguu	Onion

UMOJA / SINGULAR	**WINGI / PLURAL**	**ENGLISH**
Chai	Chai	Tea
Chapati	Chapati	Chapati
Chumvi	Chumvi	Salt
Kabichi	Kabichi	Cabbage
Kahawa	Kahawa	Coffee
Karoti	Karoti	Carrot
Nyama	Nyama	Meat
Nyama ya Ngombe	Nyama ya Ngombe	Beef
Nyama ya Mbuzi	Nyama ya Mbuzi	Goat Meat
Nyama ya Kondoo	Nyama ya Kondoo	Mutton
Pombe	Pombe	Beer
Ndizi	Ndizi	Banana
Siagi	Siagi	Butter
Soda	Soda	Soda
Sukari	Sukari	Sugar
Pilipili	Pilipili	Pepper
Sukumawiki	Sukumawiki	Kales
Nyanya	Nyanya	Tomato

M/MI

UMOJA / SINGULAR	**WINGI / PLURAL**	**ENGLISH**
Mkate	Mikate	Bread
Mhogo	Mihogo	Cassava

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ADJECTIVES

- baridi **cold.**
- bivu **ripe.**
- bichi **unripe, raw, uncooked.**
- kali **fierce, sharp.**
- tamu **sweet.**
- bovu **rotten, bad.**

VERBS

Kula	To eat/eat
Kunywa	to drink/drink
Kupika	to cook.
Kupenda	to like.
Kuja	to come.

MA CLASS

UMOJA / SINGULAR	**WINGI / PLURAL**	**ENGLISH**
Maziwa	Maziwa	Milk
Yai	Mayai	Egg
Maji	Maji	Water
Chungwa	Machungwa	Orange
Embe	Maembe	Mango
Tunda	Matunda	Fruit
Papai	Mapapai	Pawpaw
Nanasi	Mananasi	Pineaple

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

In this lesson we have used the monosyllabic verbs. With monosyllabic verbs like Ku-la and Ku-nywa, the infinitive (KU) is dropped in the present negative. Hence "ninakula" becomes "SILI" "Ninakunywa" becomes "Sinywi". etc. otherwise the pattern of present tense negative is the same as in the other verbs covered so far.

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE

Read the following passage and answer the questions below:

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Nyumbani sisi tunapenda sana kula chapati, mboga, viazi na karoti. Baba na mama yangu wanapenda kula chapati na sukumawiki. Lakini mimi sipendi sukumawiki, ninapenda kabichi tu. Mama yangu hapendi nyama ya nguruwe.

Leo asubuhi baba yangu alikunywa uji tu. Hakula kitu. Mimi nilikula yai moja la kuchemsha. Mama yangu alikunywa chai na sukari nyingi na alikula mkate na siagi. Mimi sipendi kunywa kitu moto asubuhi.

Jibu Maswali haya - Answer these questions

1. Mama anapenda kula nini? _____
2. Ulikula nini leo asubuhi? _____
3. Tunapenda kula nini? _____
4. Nani hapendi kula nyama ya nguruwe? _____
5. Baba alikula nini asubuhi? _____

ZOEZI LA PILI	EXERCISE TWO

Tafsiri sentensi hizi kwa kiswahili - Translate these sentences into Kiswahili.

1. Yesterday I drank milk. _____
2. We ate ugali in the evening. _____
3. He / She drank fruit juice. _____
4. He refused to eat bread without butter_____
5. The students did not like breakfast. _____
6. The child did not finish food. _____
7. You don't eat eggs in the morning. _____
8. They don't drink tea in the afternoon. _____



ZOEZI LA TATU	EXERCISE THREE

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Kanusha sentensi hizi - Give **the negatives of these sentences**
Kwa mfano - Example:
Ninapenda kula ndizi. - **Sipendi kula ndizi**.

1. Ninapenda kunywa pombe _____

2. Wanapenda kula ugali kila siku. _____

3. John anapendelea kula wali na nyama _____

4. Jana Ezekiel alikula viazi na nyama ya ngombe _____

5. Jana mchana watoto walikunywa maziwa _____

2. SIMPLE PAST TENSE "LI"

In Kiswahili the tense sign used to denote past simple tense is "LI". It is used exactly the same as the present tense "NA". Thus if we take the verb "kupika" - to - cook we get:

Singular	**Singular**	
Positive	**Negative**	
Ni-li-pika	Sikupika	***(I* cooked / I didn't cook.)**
U-li-pika	Hukupika	***You cooked / you didn't cook.***
A-li-pika	Hakupika	***He/she cooked / didn't cook.***

In the negative the -Li- changes to -ku- as shown above. For monosyllabic verbs the infinitive -ku- is retained in the affirmative. Note that the subject prefixes remain the same as follows:-

Nilikunywa - ***I drank / I did drink.***
Ulikunywa - ***You drank / you did drink.***
Alikunywa - ***He/she drank / He / she did drink.***

However, in the negative, the inifinitve - ku- is dropped. Hence we get the following.
Nilikunywa - Sikunywa.
Ulikunywa - Hukunywa.
Alikunywa - Hakunywa.

In this lesson we have also used the future tense - TA-. It is used just like the other tenses thus using the verb "Kupika" we get:

Nitapika	- Sitapika	***Iwill cook./I will not cook***
Utapika	-Hutapika	***You will cook/You will not cook.***
Atapika	-Hatapika	***He//she will cook/ He/She will not cook.***

Plurals

Tutapika	-Hatutapika	***We will cook. / We will not cook***
Mtapika	-Hamtapika	***You (pl) will cook/ You(pl) will not cook.***
Watapika	-Hawatapika	***They will cook/ They will not cook.***

We have also used the Adjectives like:

Baridi	-	***Cold***
-bivu	-	***ripe***
-bichi	-	***unripe***
-kali	-	***fierce, sharp, steep, strict***
-tamu	-	***sweet***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

-bovu - ***rotten***
-moto - ***hot, warm***

In Kiswahili, the adjectives come in three categories.

1) There are those, which take agreements with the nouns they qualify.
2) There are those, which take agreements, but they have a vowel stem.
3) There are those of Arabic origin and do not take agreements.

The following takes agreements and have consonant stems.
-baya ***bad***
-bovu ***rotten***
-tamu ***sweet***
-kali ***fierce, sharp, steep, strict***
-bivu ***ripe***
-chache ***few***
-geni ***strange, foreign, visitor***
-kavu ***dry***
-kubwa ***big, large***
-dogo ***small, little***

PREFIX - INDEPENDENT ADJECTIVES
Baridi - ***Cold***
Bora - ***Excellent***
Ghali - ***Expensive***
Hodari - ***Clever, effiecient, active.***
Safi - ***Clean***
Maskini - ***Poor***
Tajiri - ***Rich***
Kamili - ***Exact, Complete***

For more grammar explanation, refer to Simplified KiSwahili Grammar Book Page 23/24.

Cultural Note:
In Kenyan culture it is considered rude to smell food and even more rude to put your hands in food especially while cooking. Not even when tasting do we put our finger in food or lick the spoons we use and then dip them back into the pot.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 6

TOPIC: RESTAURANT

COMPETENCY: ORDERING FOOD



MAZUNGUMZO I DIALOGUE I

Weita :	Habari yako?	***What's your news?***
Gitahi :	Nzuri sana.	***Very good.***
Weita :	Sema.	***Say.***
Gitahi :	Kuna nini?	***What do you have?***
Weita :	Kuna wali, ugali, samaki, viazi, mboga na nyama.	***There is rice, ugali,, fish, potatoes and meat.***
Gitahi :	Niletee Samaki na ugali, ni pesa ngapi?	***Bring me fish and ugali, how much is it.***
Weita :	Ni shilingi 150/=	***It is shs. 150/=***
Gitahi :	Sawa, niletee	***Okay, bring me (after***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

	(Baada ya kula)	*eating).*
Gitahi :	Chukua pesa.	*Take the money.*
Weita :	Asante sana.	*Thank you very much.*

MAZUNGUMZO I I DIALOGUE II

Weita :	Habari yako?	*What's your news?*
Nzioka:	Nzuri.	*Good.*
Weita :	Utakula nini?	*What will you eat?*
Nzioka:	Niletee chapati	*Bring me one chapati*
	moja na nyama.	*and meat.*
Weita :	Utakunywa soda gani?	*What soda will you drink?*
Nzioka:	Nipe Fanta Baridi.	*Give me a cold Fanta.*
Weita :	Sawa	*Okay*

MAZUNGUMZO III DIALOGUE III

Weita :	Habari mama?	*How are you mother?*
Awuor:	Nzuri.	*Good.*
Weita :	Umeagiza?	*Have you ordered?*
Awuor:	Bado, niletee kikombe cha	*Not yet, bring me a cup*
	chai na maandazi mawili.	*of tea and two doughnuts.*
Weita	Sawa.	*Okay*
	(Baada ya kula na kunywa)	*(After eating and drinking)*
Awuor:	Niletee bili.	*Bring me the bill.*
	(Weita analeta bili)	*(Waiter) brings the bill)*
Awuor:	Chukua pesa.	*Take the money.*
Weita :	Asante.	*Thank you*

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

NOUNS
N CLASS

Umoja	**Wingi**	**Kiingereza**
Singular	**Plural**	**English**
Pesa	Pesa	Money
Shilingi	Shilingi	Shilling
Bili	Bili	Bill
Sahani	Sahani	Plate
Bakuli	Bakuli	Bowl
Ndururu	Ndururu	Five Cents
Peni	Peni	Ten Cents
Sumni	Sumni	Fifty Cents
Noti	Noti	Note

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

KI/VI CLASS

Kijiko	Vijiko	Spoon
Kikombe	Vikombe	Cup
Kisu	Visu	Knife

U CLASS

Uma	Nyuma	Fork

VERBS	
Kupa	To give
Kula	To eat
Kunywa	To drink
Ku - leta	To bring
Ku - agiza	To order
Ku - chukua	To take

ADVERB

Baada ya	After

ADJECTIVES	
Moja	One
Mbili	Two
Tatu	Three
Nne	Four
Tano	Five
Sita	Six
Saba	Seven
Nane	Eight
Tisa	Nine
Kumi	Ten
Ishirini	Twenty
Thelathini	Thirty
Arobaini	Fourty
Hamsini	Fifty
Sitini	Sixty
Sabini	Seventy
Themanini	Eighty
Tisini	Ninety
Mia Moja	A hundred
Elfu Moja	A thousand
Milioni moja	A million
Ngapi	How many?

EXPRESSIONS

Bado	Not yet

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

1. THE PERFECT TENSE "ME"

The "Me" tense can be used as an immediate past tense to show a completed action. It can also be used with stative verbs to show an action which has already taken place but whose effects can still be felt.
The "Me" tense as immediate past.

Mfano	-	Example
Sasa ninakula ugali	-	***Now I am eating ugali.***

As soon as the action is completed, then it becomes nimekula ugali -
I have eaten Ugali
i.e.

Nimekula ugali.	-	***I have eaten ugali.***
Umekula ugali.	-	***You have eaten ugali***
Amekula ugali	-	***S(he) has eaten ugali.***
Tumekula ugali	-	***We have eaten ugali.***
Mmekula ugali	-	***You (plural) have eaten ugali***
Wamekula ugali	-	***They have eaten ugali.***

Note:
The negative of "me" tense is "Ja". When used with monosyllabic verbs, the Inifinitive "Ku" is dropped.
Example:

Nimekula	-	Sijala
Umekula	-	Hujala
Amekula	-	Hajala
Tumekula	-	Hatujala
Mmekula	-	Hamjala
Wamekula	-	Hawajala.

2. POSSESSIVE SUFFIX "NA"

In Swahili possession is expressed by suffixing the possessive suffix - na to the subject prefix of the noun used. It is equivalent to the English word "To have".
Therefore in M/WA noun class we have:

Nina	-	I have	Sina	-	***I don't have***
Una	-	You have	Huna	-	***You don't have***
Ana	-	S(he) has	Hana	-	***S(he) ddoesn't have.***
Tuna	-	We have	Hatuna	-	***We don't have.***
Mna	-	You (pl) have	Hamna	-	***You (pl) don't have***
Wana	-	They have	Hawana	-	***They don't have.***

In Ki/Vi noun class we get:

Kikombe kina	-	***The cup (it) has.***
Vikombe vina	-	***The cups (they) have.***

*The **negatives** are:-*

Kikombe hakina	-	***The cup (it) does not have***
Vikombe havina	-	***The cups (they) do not have.***

3.The first part of this grammar explanation deals with the possessive suffix in present only. In the past and future, the verb to be "kuwa na" is used. Translated into English it means, "To be with".

Example	**-**	**M/WA Class in the past.**
Nilikuwa na pesa	-	***I (was with) had money.***
Ulikuwa na pesa	-	***You (was with) had money.***
Alikuwa na pesa	-	***S (he) (was with) had money.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Sikuwa na pesa - ***I (was not with) did not have money.***
Hakuwa na pesa - ***You (were not with) did not have money.***
Hakuwa na pesa - ***S (he) was not with) did not have money.***

Plurals:
Tulikuwa na motokaa - ***We had a car.***
Mlikuwa na motokaa - ***You (pl) had a car.***
Walikuwa na motokaa- ***They had a car.***
Hatukuwa na motokaa- ***We did not have a car.***
Hamkuwa na motokaa- ***They did not have a car.***
Hawakuwa na motokaa- ***They did not have a car.***

As mentioned earlier the verb to be "Kuwa na" is also used in the future tense by placing the "ta" tense marker between the subject prefix and the verb Kuwa.
For example. Nitakuwa na kazi - I will have work.

4. Numbers as Adjectives:

All numbers in Swahili are adjectives. They have the same characteristics and follow the same grammar rules as other adjectives. Being adjectives of quantity they come after the noun they modify. Like other adjectives, there are numbers that are prefix dependent and those that are independent of prefixes.
For example:

- The Kiswahili words for one, two, three, four, five and eight are prefit dependent.
- The Kiswahili words for six, seven, nine and ten are prefix independent



MAZOEZI - EXERCISE

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE:

Andika sentensi saba kwa kutumia maneno yafuatayo: (write seven sentences using the following words).
taka, leta, chukua, agiza, pesa, sahani kuna.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE TWO

Angalia menu hii halafu jibu maswali yafuatayo. **Look at the menu given below then answer the questions that follow:**

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

SHIBE RESTAURANT BEI YA VYAKULA	
Chakula	**Bei**
Chai	10.00
Chai bila maziwa	5.00
Maziwa moto	15.00
Maandazi	5.00
Samosa	10.00
Ugali	15.00
Kuku nusu	140.00
Nyama	30.00
Pilau	50.00
Karanja	45.00
Kienyeji	25.00
Wali	30.00
Chapati	20.00
Samaki	45.00

1. Je, leo kuna vyakula gani hotelini? _____

2. Vyakula hivi ni bei gani? _____

3. Samosa mbili ni pesa ngapi? _____

4. Ugali na samaki ni pesa ngapi? _____

5. Vikombe vitatu vya chai ni pesa ngapi? _____

6. Kuna viazi hotelini? _____

Culture Note:

1. ***It's a taboo in Kenyan culture for a person to count people while pointing. Usually we count silently. We only count animals while pointing at them.***

2. ***When it comes to eating utensils they are strictly supposed to be in the kitchen. A cup used for drinking cannot be used in the bathroom or even to feed pets.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

3. It is unusual for Kenyans to discuss their salary with other people even close friends.

4. In most local hotels there are standard menus written on the wall. Don't be surprised when, you ask for something from the menu and you are told that it is not available.

LESSON 7

TOPIC: COOKING - KUPIKA

COMPETENCY: PREPARE A LOCAL DISH.





MAZUNGUMZO 1 - DIALOGUE 1

Gina :	Mama leo ninataka kukusaidia kupika	***Mama today I want to help you with the Cooking today***
Mama:	Asante, karibu jikoni.	***Thank.s Welcome to the kitchen.***
Gina :	Tutapika nini leo kwa chakula cha mchana?	***What are we cooking for lunch today?***
Mama:	Tutapika ugali na sukuma wiki.	***We'll cook ugali with kales.***
Gina:	Sijui kupika ugali.	***I don't know how to cook ugali.***
Mama:	Nitakufunza, kwanza weka makaa kwa jiko, halafu washa kwa kiberiti na makaratasi.	***I'll teach you. First put charcoal into a stove and light with matches and paper.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Gina:	Halafu,	***Then.***
Mama:	Chemsha maji kisha, ongeza unga wa mahindi. Endelea kukoroga kwa mwiko kwa dakika kumi, halafu pakua.	***Boil water and add maize flour. Continue stirring with a wooden spoon for ten minutes and then serve***
Gina:	Unaweza kula kwa mboga gani?	***With what do you eat ugali?***
Mama:	Unaweza kula kwa nyama, maziwa lala au mboga yoyote.	***You can eat with meat, sour milk, or any vegetable.***

MAZUNGUMZO I1 - DIALOGUE 1I

Gina:	Mama ikiwa ninataka kupika kabichi nitafanyaje?	***Mother, if I want to cook cabbage what shall I do?***
Mama:	Kwanza osha kabichi, vitunguu na nyanya.Baadaye katakata vitunguu nyanya na kabichi na uweke katika bakuli mbalimbali.	***First wash the cabbage, onions and tomatoes. Later cut the onions tomatoes and cabbage into separate bowls.***
Gina:	Halafu.	***Then...***
Mama:	Sasa weka mafuta kwa sufuria, na ngoja kwa dakika chache.	***Now put oil into a pan and wait for a few minutes***
Gina:	Kisha,	***Then.,***
Mama:	Kisha ongeza vitunguu na ukorogekoroge kwa dakika chache.	***Then add the onions and stir for a few minutes.***
Gina:	Baadaye,	***Later***
Mama:	Sasa ongeza nyanya na chumvi na endelea kukoroga, baadaye ongeza kabichi na ufunike.	***Now add tomatoes, and salt, continue stirring. Later add the cabbage, stir and cover.***
Gina:	Mboga itaiva baada ya dakika ngapi?	***How long will the vegetables take to be ready?***
Mama:	Ngoja kwa dakika kumi; unaweza kula kwa wali au ugali.	***Wait for ten minutes. You can eat with rice or ugali.***
Gina:	Asante sana mama.	***Thank you very much mama.***
Mama:	Karibu.	***You are welcome.***

VOCABULARY - MSAMIATI

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

NOUNS
KI/VI

Umoja Singular Kiberiti	Wingi Plural Viberiti	 Match (es)

MA CLASS

Kaa Karatasi Mafuta	Makaa Makaratasi Mafuta	Coal(s) Paper(s) Oil

N CLASS

Dakika Bakuli Unga	Dakika Bakuli Unga	Minute(s) Bowl(s) Flour

M/MI

Mwiko	Miiko	Wooden Spoon

VERBS:

- pika	**Cook**	-safisha	***clean***
-washa	**light**	-kausha	***dry***
-saidia	**help**	-iva	***cooked, ripe***
-weka	**put/place**	-onja	***taste***
-tia	**put into**	-ponda ponda	***mush***
-tumia	***use***	-changanya	***mix***
-koroga	***stir***	-funika	***cover***
-anza	***start/begin***	-pakua	***serve***
-katakata	***cut/slice/chop*** -	-weza	***be able***
-chemsha	***boil***	-ngoja	***wait***
-osha	***wash***	-ongeza	***add, increase***

EXPRESSIONS

baadaye	***later***
kisha	***then***
halafu	***then***
ikiwa	***if***
mbalimbali	***different***
sasa	***now***

MAELEZO YA SARUFI – GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

In this lesson we have used simple commands (imperatives). To make an imperative from an infinitive verb, you drop the "ku" and then the verb stem becomes the imperative. All singular imperatives follow these rules. Examples:

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Verb Infinitive	Imperative	English
Kufanya	Fanya!	Do!
Kununua	Nunua!	Buy!
Kupika	Pika!	Cook!
Kuchemsha	Chemsha!	Boil!
Kukoroga	Koroga!	Stir!

The same will apply to the verbs of Arabic origin (i.e. verbs that do not end with vowel 'a' e.g.

Kurudi	rudi!	**return!**
Kujibu	jibu!	**answer!**
Kujaribu	jaribu!	**try!**
Kufikiri	fikiri!	**think!**
Kusamehe	samehe!	**forgive!**
Kufahamu	fahamu!	**understand!**

However, monosylabic verbs retain their 'infinitive- 'KU- even for the imperative. The tone of voice used emphasizes the imperative.

Kula Eat
Kunywa Drink

EXCEPTIONS:
There are only three exceptions:
Kuleta has the imperative 'lete!' (instead of leta!) bring!.
Kwenda has the imprative "Nenda! (instead of kwenda) go.!
Kuja has the imperative 'Njoo! (Instead of 'Kuja') come!.

Imperative Plural:
To creat a plural imprative the "infinitive' 'KU'- is again dropped, but the suffix '-a" is replaced by the suffix (-eni') Thus we get:

Soma	-	Someni	***Read!***
Pika	-	Pikeni	***Cook***
Ngoja	-	Ngojeni	***Wait***
Kata	-	Kateni	***Cut***

With verbs of Arabic Origin the suffix '-ni' is merely added to the original final vowel, thus:

Rudi!	Rudini!	***Return!***
Jibu!	Jibuni!	***Answer!***
Jaribu!	Jaribuni!	***Try!***

Monosyllabic verbs still retain their infinitive 'ku' although by adding another syllable they become bi-syllabic. The suffix '-a', however, is again replaced by the suffix '-eni'.

Kula!	Kuleni!	***Eat!***
Kunywa!	Kunyweni!	***Drink!***

THE NEGATIVE IMPRATIVE!
There is no abrupt negative imperative. Instead the negative subjunctive is used, and being subjunctive, this imprative is outomatically polite, having a sense of 'would you not ..... The negative subjuntive is made up as follows:

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

The prefix 'ku-' is dropped.
The prefix 'u' - is used for the singular 2nd person.
The infix -'si' is used to denote the negative;
The suffix '-a' is replaced by the suffix -'e' to denote subjentive. Thus with the verb "KU-Fa-nya' we get Usifanye

Note that even the monosyllabic verbs become regular here. Thus

Usiende!	***Don't go!***
Usifanya!	***Don't do!***
Usikate!	***Don't cut!***
Usisome!	***Don't read!***
Usinywe!	***Don't drink!***
Usije!	***Don't come!***
Usiwe!	***Don't be!. Don't become.***

Note: 'Usiwe' must be followed by a noun or adjective.
To obtain the plural negtive imperative all that is done is to change the Prefix 'U-' to "M" which denotes second persom plural, thus:

Msifanye	- ***You all don't do!***
Msile	- ***You all don't eat!***
Msije	- ***You all don't come!***
Msifike!	- ***You all don't arrive!***
Msirudi	- ***You all don't return.***

Verb Duplication: Several verb duplication have also been used. This is a remarkable aspect of swahili grammar. Almost any verb can be reduplicated; and the meaning is usually "doing it repatedly or continuously".

Examples:

Kata	***Cut***	Katakata	***Cut repeatedly /Slice***
Koroga	**Stir**	Koroga koroga	***Stir repeatedly***
Changanya	**Mix**	Changanyachanga	***Mix repeatedly***
Chemsha	**Boil**	Chemshachemsha	***Boil repeately***
Piga	**Hit**	Pigapiga	***Hit repeatedly***

EXERCISE ONE

Make imperative from the following infinitive verbs and complete the sentences e.g.

Kupika	**To cook**
-pika chai!	**-Cook tea!**

a)	Kunywa	b)	Kula	c)	Kukoroga
d)	Kuchemsha	e)	Kukatakata	f)	Kurudi
g)	Kununua	h)	Kutumia	i)	Kusaidia
j)	Kuosha.				

EXERCISE TWO

Tafsiri sentensi hizi----------Translate this sentenses

1) Wash all vegetables well before you cook.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

2) Use matches to light a charcoal stove.

3) It is very important to boil drinking water.

4) We'll cook rice with chicken.

5) Cut the onions, put them in a pan, add oil and salt and then stir for a few minutes.

6) You can eat fish with ugali.

7) Mother taught Gina how to cook chapati.

8) Remember to buy vegetables at the market.

9) Who will cook dinner today?

10) My host family cooks very well.

11) I would like to cook dinner tomorrow

EXERCISE THREE

Change the following imperatives into negative subjuctives:

1) Chemsha maji kabla ya kunywa.

2) Nunua matunda yote sokoni.

3) Katakata vitunguu sasa.

4) Kula kabla ya kulala.

5) Baada ya kuamka piga mswaki.

6) Soma vitabu vya kiswahili kila siku.

7) Jaribuni kusema kiswahili kila siku.

8) Rudini darasani sasa.



Cultural Note:
Generally men do not cook and are not expected to be in the kitchen, except when the meal involves roast meat or during celebrations. However, this is changing especially in the urban areas where both husband and wife have full day jobs.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 8

TOPIC: SHOPPING - KUNUNUA

COMPETENCY: PURCHASE ITEMS



MAZUNGUMZO I	DIALOGUE 1

Kamau:	Habari gani?	***What's the news?***
John:	Nzuri sana.	***Very good.***
Kamau:	Ungetaka kununua nini?	***What would you want to buy?***
IJohn:	Ningetaka kununua shati. ni pesa ngapi?	***I would like to buy a shirt how much is it?***
Kamau:	Ni shilingi mia tatu.	***It is three hundred shillings.***
John:	Mia tatu! Hiyo ni bei ghali sana. Punguza kidogo.	***Three hundred!! That is very expensive. Reduce a little.***
Kamau:	Hapana: Hiyo ni bei rahisi.	***No that is very cheap. How much***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

	Unataka kulipa pesa ngapi?	***do you want to pay.?***
John:	Nina shilingi mia moja.	***I have one hundred shllings.***
Kamau:	Mia moja ni pesa kidogo sana Ongeza shilingi themanini.	***One hundred is very little money add eighty shillings.***
John:	Nitaongeza shilingi hamsini .	***I will add fifty shillings.***
Kamau:	Sawa sawa. Chukua.	***Okay, take.***
John:	Asante Sana tutaonana siku nyingine.	***Thank you very much. See you another day***

MAZUNGUMZO YA PILI	DIALOGUE TWO

Awuor:	Karibu sana, habari yako:	***You are very welcome. How are you?***
Mary:	Nzuri sana.	***Very good.***
Awuor:	Ungependa kununua nini?	***What would you like to buy?***
Mary:	Unauzaje mananasi?	***How much do you sell pineapples for?***
Awuor:	Nanasi moja ni shilingi ishirini.	***One pineapple is twenty shillings.***
Mary:	Nitanunua mananasi mawili kwa shilingi thelathini.	***I will buy two pineapples at twenty shilings.***
Awuor:	Hapana, ongeza shilingi tano.	***No add five shilings.***
Mary:	Sawa sawa	***Okay.***
Awuor:	Chukua	***Take.***
Mary:	Asante sana	***Thank you very much.***

MSAMIATI	VOCABULARY

N CLASS

Umoja - Singular	**Wingi - Plural**	**Kingereza - English**
Siku	Siku	Day
Bei	Bei	price

MA CLASS

Shati	Mashati	Shirt

VERBS

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

-taka	-	***want***
-nunua	-	***buy***
-ongeza	-	***add***
-lipa	-	***pay***
-onana	-	***See each other (reciprocal form for ona)***
-punguza	-	***reduce***
-chukua	-	***take***
-uza	-	***sell***

ADJECTIVES

-ghali	-	expensive
-rahisi	-	cheap

MAELEZO YA SARUFI | GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

1. "NGE" TENSE

'Nge" tense (Non-conditional) is used as a request "would" e.g.

Ungependa kununua nini? ***What would you like to buy?***
Ungetaka kula nini? ***What would you like to eat?***

2. "Nge" is also used to indicate conditional tenses either in the past or in the present. It takes the position of other tenses. e.g.

Ungeenda Nairobi jana ungeona rafiki yako. ***If you had gone to Nairobi yesterday you would have seen your friend.***

Wangekuwa mjini sasa, wangeweza kununua nguo. ***If they were in town now, they would have been able to buy clothes.***

Note: To turn a sentence with 'nge' into negative, the 'nge' itself is not affected but any subject prefixes preceding it are turned into negative.

Ningependa becomes singependa.
Wangependa becomes hawangependa.

MAZOEZI - EXERCISES

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE



Tafsiri sentensi zifuatazo ----- translate the following sentences

1. I would like to buy a bicycle. _____.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

2. We would like to speak Kiswahili. _____.

3. He would like to stay home this weekend._____.

4. I would like to pay now. _____.

5. They would like to go to the market. _____.

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE TWO

Replace the present (NA) tense with (NGE) tense in the following sentences.

1. Tunataka kwenda Mombasa kwa basi. _____

2. Ninapenda kula Chapati na Kuku. _____

3. Mnataka kutembea karibu na ziwa Naivasha? _____.

4. Ninapenda kupumzika baada ya shule. _____.

5. Ninaenda Nairobi kununua nguo. _____.

ZOEZI LA TATU - EXERCISE THREE

Turn the following sentenses into negative:

1. Ningetaka kuishi katika Kenya. _____.

2. John angetaka kwendesha baiskeli. _____.

3. Tungependa kusafiri kwa matatu. _____.

4. Ningependa kununua viatu na nguo leo. _____.

5. John na Peter wangetaka kusoma Kiswahili. _____.

6. Ningetaka kutembelea Peter kesho. _____

Cultural Note:

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Bargaining in African Communities is part of business. It is very important for any visitor in Kenyan society to learn the market vocabulary for better survival. Generally the buyer's aim is to buy at a cheaper price while the seller intends to get some profit. Most commodities do not have prices. You need to enquire the prices before you buy or bargain.

Note:
You cannot bargain on factory products because they have recommended prices.

LESSON 9

TOPIC: PERSONAL SAFETY

COMPETENCY: 1. DEALING WITH MATATU TOUTS & STREET CHILDREN

2. DEALING WITH BOTHERSOME PROSTITUTES AND PICKUPS





MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE

Wanja:	Habari bwana?	***How are you gentleman?***
Scott:	Nzuri bibi, na wewe je?	***Fine mada. And you?***
Wanja:	Nzuri sana, ninunulie chupa moja.	***Very Good. Buy me one bottle (beer).***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Scott:	Leo sina pesa.	***Today I don't have money.***
Wanja:	Basi ninunulie soda.	***Okay buy me a soda.***
Scott:	Haya pewa.	***Okay take / be given.***
Wanja:	Unaitwaje?	***How are you called?***
Scott:	Ninaitwa Scott.	***I am called Scott.***
Wanja:	Unatoka wapi?	***Where do you come from?***
Scott:	Ninatoka Amerika.	***I come from America.***
WanJa:	Una mke?	***Do you have a wife?***
Scott:	Ndiyo.	***Yes.***
Wanja:	Yuko wapi?	***Where is she?***
Scott:	Amerika.	***Amerika.***
Wanja	Ninakupenda sana.	***I love you so much.***
Scott:	Hapana nimeoa na sitaki mke mwingine.	***No I am married and I don't want another wife.***
Wanja:	Haya Asante.	***Okay, thank you.***
Sctott:	Kwaheri, tutaonana.	***Bye. See you.***

MAZUNGUMZO II - DIALOGUE II

Kiprop:	Habari yako bibi?	***How are you madam?***
Tina:	Nzuri sana.	***Very well.***
Kiprop:	Unakwenda wapi?	***Where are you going?***
Tina:	Ninaenda nyumbani.	***I am going home.***
Kiprop:	Ningependa kukununulia soda.	***I would like to buy you a soda.***
Tina: Kiprop:	Asante sana. Wapi? Twende Makuti.	***Thank you very much. Where?*** ***Let's go at Makuti..***
Tina:	Sawa. Hakuna shida.	***Okay. No problem.***
Kiprop:	Utakunywa nini?	***What will you drink?***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Tina:	Nitakunywa Tusker baridi.	***I'll drink a cold Tusker.***
Kiprop:	Mimi pia Tusker baridi. Umeolewa?	***Me too a cold Tusker.*** ***Are you married?***
Tina:	Ndio. Nina mume.	***Yes. I have a husband.***
Kiprop:	Mume wako yuko wapi?	***Where is your husband?***
Tina:	Yuko Amerika.	***He is in Amerika.***
Kiprop:	Ninakupenda sana.	***I love you so much.***
Tina:	Pole nina bwana.	***Sorry I have a husband.***
Kiprop:	Twende kwangu.	***Let's go at my place.***
Tina:	Siwezi nimeolewa.	***I cant, I am married.***
Kiprop:	Sawa sawa tu.	***Okay.***
Tina	Kwaheri.	**Goodbye.**

MAZUNGUMZO III - DIALOGUE III

Manamba:	Ingia twende!	***Get in we go.***
Scott:	Siendi	***I am not going.***
Manamba :	Ingia twende. Hakuna gari lingine.	***Get in we go there's no another vehicle.***
Scott:	Hapana, siendi sasa.	***No, I am not going now.***
Manamba:	Gari hili ni la mwisho weka mzigo ndani twende.	***This is the last vehicle.*** ***Put your luggages in we go.***
Scott:	Usiniguze, acha mzigo wangu nitaubeba.	***Don't touch me. Leave my luggage, I will carry it.***
Manamba:	Haya ingia haraka twende.	***Ok get in quickly we go.***
Scott:	Sawa sawa. Asante.	***Okey. Thank you.***
Manamba:	Lipa nauli.	***Pay fare.***
Scott:	Pesa ngapi kwenda Emali?	***How much is it to go to Mombasa?***
Manamba:	Shilingi mia mbili.	***Two hundred shillings***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Scott:	Hapana ni shilingi mia moja au nitashuka.	***No. it is one shillings or I will get out.***
Manamba:	Haya toa pesa.	***Okey, get out the money.***
Scott:	Chukua na nipe chenji yangu.	***Take and give me my change.***

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

NOUNS
M/WA CLASS

Umoja **Singular**	**Wingi** **Plural**	**Kiingereza** **English**
Mwizi	Wezi	Thief
Malaya	Malaya	Prostitute
Mtalii	Watalii	Tourist
Manamba	Manamba	Touts

M/MI CLASS

Mzigo	Mizigo	Luggage

N CLASS

Chupa	Chupa	Bottle

VERBS

Ku-oa	***to marry***.
Ku-olewa	***to be married.***
Ku--omba	***ask to for***.
Ku-guza	***to touch***.
Ku-beba	***to carry***.
Ku-toa	***to remove***.
Ku-acha	***to leave*** (somebody or something).
Ku-sumbua	***to disturb***.
Ku-ogopa	***to fear***.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

OBJECT INFIXES

Object infixes in Swahili, unlike in English are placed within the verb after the tense marker and before the verb stem to stand in place of pronouns me, you, him/her etc. and their plurals.

For Example:

In the M-WA Noun class the object infixes are:

Singular			**Plural**		
ni	-	**me)**	tu	-	**us.**
Ku	-	**you)**	wa	-	**you.**
M	-	**he/she)**	wa	-	**then.**

Singular	
Ana**ni**penda	**She/he likes me.**
Ana**ku**penda	**She/he likes you (sg).**
Ana**m**penda	**She/he likes him/her.**
Plural:	
Ali**tu**ona	**S/he saw us.**
Ali**wa**ona	**S/he saw you (pl)**
Ali**wa**ona	**S/he saw them**

Note: Both the second person and the third person plural are the same. Therefore to distinguish between the two, the content meaning is very helpful.

When the verb stems begin with vowels -MW- object infix is used for third person singular.

e.g. Nili**mw**ona jana - **I saw him yesterday.**

All the other Noun Class object infixes are similar to the subject prefixes covered in earlier lessons.

e.g. KI/VI Class

Alikisoma kitabu	**He read the book**
Alivisoma vitabu	**He read the books.**

SUBJUNCTIVES:

Subjective is a polite form of asking for things, giving directives as well as giving suggestions. In Kiswahili changing the last vowel "a" of the verb root to does this "e". Verbs that end with any other vowel are not affected e.g. i, e, u, etc.

Note: It has no tense sign, and so the subject prefix is placed directly on the verb stem.

For example:

1) Polite Imperative **(used only in the second person).**
   - Ungoje - **would you wait**

   - Mgonje - **would you wait (pl).**

2) **The suggestion (let me .....**
   Ningoje - **let me wait.**
   Angoje - **let him / her wait.**
   Twende - **let us go.**

3) **Questioned/Suggestion?**
   Niende? **Am I to go?**

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Aende? **Is he**  **/she to go?**
Twende lini? **When are we to go?**

4) To translate the second of two commands, and indirect commands e.g.
- Mwambie apike chakula - **Tell him to cook the food.**
- Mwambie aende nyumbani - **Tell her to go home.**

The Negative Subjunctive:
The negative of subjunctives are made by inserting -si- between the subject prefixe and the root of the verb. e.g.

Usiende - **Don't go.**
Usitembee - **Don't walk.**
Usione - **Don't see.**
Usisome kitabu **Don't read the book.**

Monosyllabic Verbs drop their Ku.
e.g. Usile chakula - Don't eat food.
For more grammar explanation please refer to P.M. Wilson Grammar Book pages 118, 119 and 120.

MAZOEZI - EXERCISES

ZOEZI I - EXERECISE I

Tafsiri sentensi hizi.
(Translate these sentenses)

1. Twende sokoni _____.
2. Tutembelee rafiki yetu_____
3. Twende tuone watoto _____
4. Tupike chakula _____
5. Twende tulale _____.
6. Niende Nairobi? _____
7. Nikae hapa? _____
8. Asome nini? _____

ZOEZI II - EXERCISE II

Tafsiri sentensi hizi (Translate these sentenses).

1. Don't go to Nairobi by Matatu _____
2. Don't eat bad food _____

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

3. Don't walk at night _____
4. Don't drink beer _____
5. Don't run in the morning _____
6. Don't sleep here _____

ZOEZI III - EXERCISE III

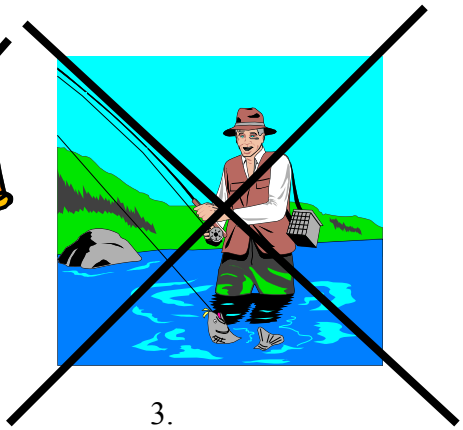
Andika kinyume cha "subjunctive" ukitumia vitendo na picha ulioyopewa. (**Write the negative subjunctive using the given verbs and drawings.**



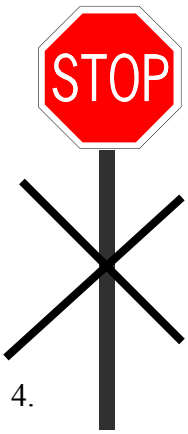
1.



2.



3.



4.

For example:
Usilale darasani.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

ZOEZI (IV) - EXERCISE (IV)

Tafsiri sentensi hizi ukitumia (object infixes)
For example:
My friend loves me very much - Rafiki yangu ananipenda sana

1. My friend gave me money._____
2. My father saw me in the monring. _____
3. The teacher is teaching me Kiswahili _____
4. His brother gave him a present _____

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

5. They gave him food _____

Cultural Note:

1. Dating in Kenyan context is viewed differently. i.e. if you are invited for a cup of coffee by a person of the opposite sex and you say yes, they probably expect you to end up in bed.

2. When you are mugged or your house is broken into, don't resist. Instead give out and report to the Police Station or to the Local Chief / Sub chief. It is also important to learn to scream in a Kenyan way.

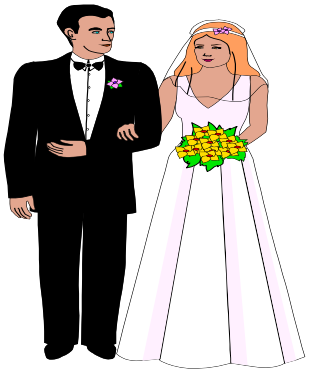
3. If a person places a hand on some parts of your body where you feel uncomfortable e.g. thighs, breasts etc. especially when traveling by public means, please make it public by shouting or resisting. If you don't, people will assume that you are enjoying.

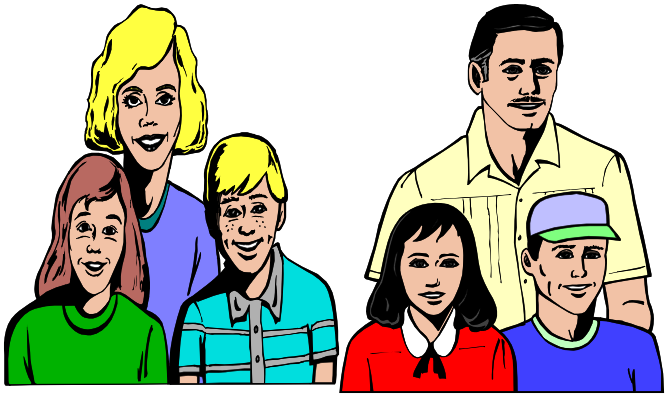
4. Any woman who goes to a local bar (not big hotel) is assumed to be a commercial sex worker. (Mostly rural bar)

LESSON 10

TOPIC: FAMILY - JAMAA

COMPETENCY: DESCRIBE FAMILY





Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAZUNGUMZO 1		DIALOGUE 1
Ezekiel:	Hujambo Lusimba?	***How are you Lusimba?***
Lusimba:	Sijambo bwana Ezekiel.	***I am fine***
Ezekiel:	Unatoka wapi?	***Where are you from?***
Lusimba:	Ninatoka Nairobi	***I am from Nairobi.***
Ezekiel:	Habari za Nairobi?	***How is Nairobi?***
Lusimba:	Si mbaya	***Not bad.***
Ezekiel:	Huyu ni rafiki yako?	***Is this your friend?***
Lusimba:	Hapana huyu ni baba na anarudi nyumbani.	***No, this is my father and he is returning home.***
Ezekiel:	Dada yako amemaliza shule?	***Has your sister finished school?***
Lusimba:	Bado lakini kaka yangu amemaliza chuo kikuu.	***Not yet, but my brother has finished University.***
Ezekiel:	Sasa kaka yako anafanya nini?	***Now what is your brother doing?***
Lusimba:	Anajaribu kutafuta kazi.	***He is trying to look for a job.***
Ezekiel:	Pole pole tu, atapata kazi.	***Slowly, slowly, he will get a job.***
Lusimba:	Asante kwa kukutana na wewe.	***Thank you for meeting with you.***
Ezekiel:	Asante kwaheri tutaonana tena.	***Thank you, goodbye we will see each other again.***

MSAMIATI	VOCABULARY

N CLASS

Umoja - Singular	Wingi - Plural	Kingereza - English
Kazi	Kazi	Work
Habari	Habari	News
Shule	Shule	School

KI - VI CLASS

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Umoja - Singular	Wingi - Plural	Kingereza - English
Chuo Kikuu	Vyuo vikuu	University

M - WA CLASS

Umoja - Singular	Wingi - Plural	Kingereza - English
Mzazi	Wazazi	Parent
Dada	Dada	Sister
Mama	Mama	Mother
Baba	Baba	Father
Mtoto	Watoto	Child
Kaka	Kaka	Brother
Babu	Babu	Grandfther
Nyanya	Nyanya	Grandmother
Mke	Wake	Wife
Mjomba	Wajomba	Uncle
Shangazi	Shangazi	Aunt
Mjukuu	Wajukuu	Grand Child
Mvulana	Wavulana	Boy
Msichana	Wasichana	Girl
Rafiki	Marafiki	Friend

ADJECTIVES

- baya - bad

VERBS

Ku-maliza	-	***to finish***
Ku-jaribu	-	***to try.***
ku-tafuta	-	***to look for***
ku- pata	-	***to get, to find.***
ku-tana	-	***to meet.***
ku-onana	-	***to see each other***
ku-fanya	-	***to do***

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXPLANATION.

In this lesson we have used the demonstrative "Huyu" which translate to English "THIS". We have focused on "M-Wa Class demonstrative pronouns. They are as follows:

Huyu	-	This person (near the speaker).
Huyo	-	That person (near the one who is addressed)
Yule	-	That person (at a distance from both the speaker and the one addressed)

Example:

Huyu ni rafiki yangu.	***This is my friend.***
Huyo ni Peter	***That person (near you) is Peter.***
Yule ni mzee	***That person (at a distance is an old person)***

The plural forms of the "M-Wa" Class demonstatives are as follows:

Hawa wasichana	***These girls***
Hao wanafunzi	***Those students***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Wale watoto ***Those children***
Hawa wavulana ***These boys***

Linguistically, demonstrative pronouns are in three categories.

(a) Proximal demonstrative pronouns.
(b) Referential demonstrative pronouns.
(c) Distal demonstrative pronouns.

Example:

1. Proximal Demonstrative:
Huyu ni rafiki ***-(This is a friend (near me that I can actually touch)***

2. Refrential Demonstrative: Stands in place of a person or object (as in above) near the person who is being spoken to. Also this form of demonstrative can stand in place of a person or object that is not there but has already been reffered to by name for example: Mwalimu Huyo anapenda kufundisha - ***That Teacher likes teaching.***

3. Distal Demonstrative: This is used in place of an object or person that is at a distance from both the Sepaker and the "Spoken to" but that can actually be seen and pointed at. If I cannot be seen then I become a referential demonstrative as shown in Number 2 above.

Example of Distal Demonstrative.
Yule ni John - ***That (at a distance) is John.***
Yule ni mama - ***That (at a distance) is a mother.***
Yule ni mwalimu - ***That (at a distance) is a teacher.***

For more details refer to Simplied Swahili Grammar Book Page 25 and 26 and for other noun classes refer to page 217. Your trainer will also explain this in details.

MAZOEZI - EXERCISES.



ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE

Jina langu ni Joe. Ninaishi Namanga na wazazi wangu. Baba yangu anaitwa Moses na mama anaitwa Sarah. Nina ndugu sita; kaka wanne na dada wawili. Dada yangu mkumbwa ameolewa na ana watoto wawili. Shangazi yangu anaitwa Rhoda yeye ni mwalimu na pia mfanyi biashara katika mji wa Kakamega, yeye hututembelea kila wikendi.

Ndugu zangu wengine ni wanafunzi katika shule ya upili. Wawili watafanya mtihani wa "KCE" mwaka huu. Babu na nyanya wetu wanaishi na sisi pia kwa sababu wao ni wazee sana. Baba na nyanya wanapenda kuzungumza na wajukuu wao kwa sababu wanawapenda sana.

JIBU MASWALI HAYA - ANSWER THESE QUESTIONS.

1. Joe anaishi wapi? _____
2. Joe anaishi na nani? _____
3. Joe ana ndugu wangapi na wanafanya nini? _____
4. Shangazi ya Joe anafanya nini? _____

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

5. Kwa nini babu na nyanya wa Joe wanapenda kuzungumza na wajukuu wao? _____

6. Dada ya Joe ana watoto wangapi? _____

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE TWO

ANDIKA KATIKA KISWAHILI - WRITE IN KISWAHILI.

1. I have two sisters and one brother. _____

2. My aunt is a businesswoman. _____

3. Her parents are not working. _____

4. His father lives in Amerika. _____

5. My sister is not married. _____

6. My two younger brothers go to school. _____

7. Their parents are farmers. _____

8. His grandfather died last year. _____
9. My brother has finished university. _____

10. My uncle is sick. _____

ZOEZI LA TATU - EXERCISE THREE

Kamilisha sentensi zifuatazo kwa kuweka maumbo sahihi: -
Complete the following sentences with appropriate Noun Formsforms.

e.g. Nina dada (1) mmoja.

1. Nina dada (2) _____

2. Tuna shangazi (1) _____

3. Ana watoto (4) _____

4. Wana watoto (9) _____

5. Familia ina watoto wasichana (3) _____

6. Nina watoto wavulana (5) _____

7. Sina watoto wengi, nina watoto (3) _____

8. Dada yake John ana watoto (10) _____

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI LA NNE - EXERCISE FOUR

Turn these sentences into Kiswahili: ***Geuza sentensi hizi kwa Kiswahili***
Example:
I have a sister but you don't.
Nina dada, lakini wewe huna.

1. I have an uncle but you don't. _____ _____
2. That woman has children but this woman doesn't. _____
3. We have a grandfather but you (pl) don't. _____
4. My uncles have a big family, but I don't. _____
5. Kenyans have large families but Americans don't. _____
6. My three uncles live in Kajiado. _____
7. Our two sisters are from Chicago. _____
8. Her eight children live in Nairobi. _____
9. I have three friends.They come from Kisumu _____
10. John has four brothers. They live in Nakuru. _____

Cultural Note:
Africans have extended relations. The family includes all sorts of relatives, close and distant and as children grow up they are required to know all their relatives and even where African have adapted the nuclear family model. They usually maintain close relations with other relatives. So in many cases, the minimum that will be required of you is to know something about all your existing relatives.

Naming of children varies from one ethnic group to another. If you are interested in knowing about any specific group, talk to any of the trainers from that particular ethnic group or your family member.

When it comes to things like pregnancy, they are treated as confidential matters and people just don't talk about them freely. For more information please consult your trainers.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 11

TOPIC: PROFESSIONS

COMPETENCY: STATE THEIR PROFESSIONS AND OTHER PEOPLES' PROFESSION








MAZUNGUMZO ONE - DIALOGUE ONE

PCV:	Habari yako Mama?	***How are you mother?***
Mama:	Nzuri sana.	***Very good.***
PCV:	Habari za kazi.	***How is work?***
Mama:	Si mbaya.	***Not bad.***
PCV:	Unafanya kazi gani mama?	***What work do you do mother?***
Mama:	Mimi ni mfanyi biashara.	***I am a businessperson.***
PCV:	Unafanya biashara gani?	***What bussiness do you do?***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mama:	Biashara ya duka.	***Bussiness of duka.***
PCV:	Vizuri sana! Na mimi ni Mshauri wa biashara ndogo. Ninawashauri watu ambao wana biashara ndogo kama wewe.	***Very good. I am a Small business advisor. I advice people who have Small Business like you.***
Mama:	Asante sana. Ninatumaini tutafanya kazi pamoja.	***Thank you. I hope we will work together.***
PCV:	Mimi pia ninatumaini tutafanya kazi pamoja.	***I also hope we will work together.***

MAZUNGUMGO II - DIALOGUE II

Nzioka:	Habari gani?	***What news.***
Awuor:	Nzuri sana.	***Very well.***
Nzioka:	Jina langu ni Nzioka. Mimi ni Daktari katika hospitali hii.	***My name is Nzioka. I am a doctor in this hospital.***
Awuor:	Ninaitwa Atieno, Nimekuja kufanya kazi hapa kama muuguzi. Kabla ya kuja hapa nilikuwa muuguzi katika Mombasa.	***I am called Atieno*** ***I have come to work here as a nurse. Before coming here I was a nurse in Mombasa.***
Nzioka:	Oh! Asante sana na karibu.	***Oh! Thank you very much and welcome.***
Awuor:	Asante.	***Thank you.***

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

NOUNS

N CLASS

Umoja - Singular	**Wingi - Plur**	**Kiingereza - English**
Kazi	Kazi	Work
Biashara	Biashara	Business
Hospitali	Hospitali	Hospital
Kilimo Mseto	Kilimo Mseto	Agroforestry

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

M/WA CLASS

Mfanyi biashara	Wafanyi biashara	Business/man/woman
Mshauri wa biashara	Washauri wa biashara	Business advisor
Daktari	Madaktari	Doctor
Muuguzi	Wauguzi	Nurse
Mkulima	Wakulima	Farmer
Mpishi	Wapishi	Cook
Seremala	Seremala	Carpenter
Mwalimu	Walimu	Teacher
Mwanafunzi	Wanafunzi	Student
Fundi	Mafundi	Technician
Mchezaji	Wachezaji	Player
Polisi	Polisi	Police
Karani	Makarani	Clerk
Mkurugezi	Wakurugezi	Director
Meneja	Meneja	Manager

VERBS

- tumaini **hope**

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

THE "AMBA" RALATIVE PRONOUN.

In Kiswahili the relatives which, who, whom and that are denoted by the root "Amba-" which takes appropriate suffixes according to the noun it refers to. The relatives suffixes for some noun classes are shown in the table below.

NOUN CLASS	M/WA	KI/VI	N	MA	MI	U
Singular	Ambaye	Ambacho	Ambayo	Ambalo	Ambao	Ambao
Plural	Ambao	Ambavyo	Ambazo	Ambayo	Ambayo	Ambazo

Mfano - Example

Huu ni mkate ambao niliununua jana. ***(This is the bread, which I bought yesterday)***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Hiki ni kitabu ambacho nilikisoma jana. ***(This is the book, which I read yesterday).***
Hawa ni watu ambao walikuja. ***(These are the people who came).***

However, we have the contracted forms of the "Amba" pattern, which are much more commonly used in daily speech. These contracted forms depend upon the use of what we call relative pronoun markers, which are simply the suffixes that go with "Amba". These markers maybe used with tense markers Na, Li and Ta.

Mfano - Example - M/WA Class

Mtu anayesoma ni rafiki yangu - Mtu ambaye anasoma ni rafiki yangu
(The person who is reading is my friend)
Watu wanaosoma ni wageni - Watu ambao wanasoma ni wageni
(The people who are reading are visitors)
Mtoto atakayepita mtihani ataenda Mombasa - Mtoto ambaye atapita mtihani ataenda Mombasa.
(The child who will pass the exam will go to Mombasa)

Note: With the future tense "Ka" is infixed between the future tense marker 'ta' and the relative infix "ye".

KI - VI CLASS

Kitabu ninachosoma ni kizuri - Kitabu ambacho ninasoma ni kizuri
(The book which i'm reading is good)
Vitabu ninavyosoma ni vizuri - Vitabu ambavyo ninasoma ni vizuri
(The books which i'm reading are good)
Kiti nilichonunua ni kipya - Kiti ambacho nilinunua ni kipya
(The chair which I bought is new)
Viti nilivyonunua ni vipya - Viti ambavyo nilinunua ni vipya
(The chairs which I bought are new)

N CLASS

Nyumba aliyojenga kubwa sana - Nyumba ambayo alijenga ni kubwa sana
(the house which he built is very big)
Kalamu zinazonunuliwa ni nzuri - Kalamu ambazo zinanunuliwa ni nzuri
(The pens which are being bought are good)

THE VERB TO BE 'KUWA'

1) The verb to be in verbial form appear in two ways in Kiswahili namely
   a) Ni, which is used only in the present and
   b) "Kuwa" which is used in all other tenses.
   "Ni" has already been covered in earlier lessons.

2) KUWA

This is a monosyllabic verb and as such it is subject to all the rules pertaining to monosyllabic verbs in affirmative and negative constructions. Hence from the present tense we get:

Mimi ni Mwalimu - ***I am a teacher.***

Past tense:

Nilikuwa mwalimu - ***I was a teacher***

Future Tense:

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Nitakuwa mwalimu - ***I will be a teacher***

The negatives are as follows: -

Present tense

Mimi si mkulima - ***I am not a farmer***

Past tense

Mimi sikuwa mkulima - ***I was not a farmer***

Future tense

Mimi sitakuwa mkulima - ***I will not be a farmer***

-

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE

Kamilisha sentensi hizi - Complete the following sentences



1) Mtu ambaye hutibu wagonjwa ni _____.

2) Watu ambao hupika chakula ni _____.

3) Watu wanaovua samaki ni _____.

4) Mtu anayefundisha wanafunzi ni _____.

5) Fundi ni mtu ambaye _____.

6) Dereva ni mtu ambaye _____.

7) Mtu ambaye huendesha ndege ni _____.

8) Watu ambao hununua na kuuza vitu ni _____.

9) Rais ni mtu ambaye _____.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE TWO

Jaza nafasi ukitumia "amba" (Fill in the blanks using "Amba" relative clause.
Mfano - Example:
Mtu _____ anasoma ni kaka yangu.
Mtu ambaye anasoma ni kaka yangu.

1) Yule mtu ----------anazungumza nje ni rafiki yangu.
2) Watoto ---------- watakwenda Lamu ni wanafunzi.

3) Niliwaona watu ----------walikuwa dukani.

4) Wanafunzi----------wanakatazwa kutoka nje ni wasichana.

5) Kitabu ---------- alisoma kilipotea jana usiku.

6) Tafadhali mpe Jim Kalamu---------- nilikupa jana jioni.

7) Machungwa ----------nilinunua sokoni hayakuwa mazuri sana, ----------yalikuwa yameoza.

/

ZOEZI LA TATU - EXERCISE THREE

Tafsiri Sentensi zifuatazo katika Kiswahili ukitumia 'Amba" kwa ufupi - Translate the following sentences into Kiswahili using "Amba" relative clause in it's contracted form.

1) This is the book, which I bought the day before yesterday. _____

2) These are boys who are speaking English. _____

3) Is this the bread, which you baked. _____

4) This is the house, which I am painting. _____

5) Take these three fruits, which I bought last week. _____

6) This is the room which we slept in._____

7) These are the trees, which we planted last year. _____

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

8) I will give you this book, which I have just finished to read. _____
_____

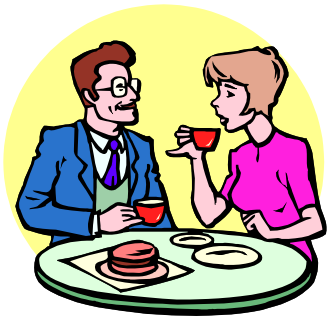
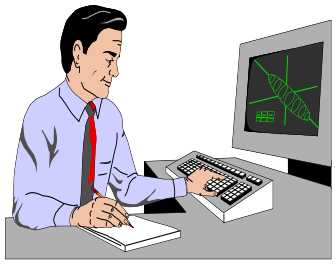
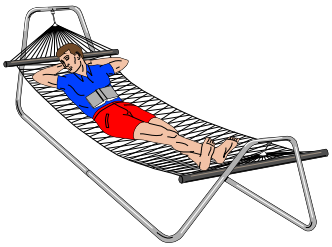
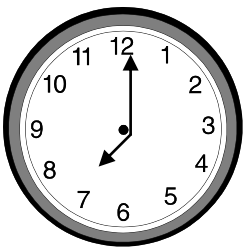
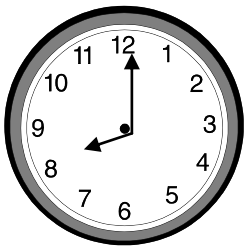
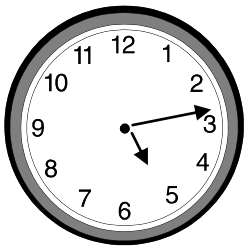
Cultural Note:
Work is something you do and you are paid for or get some income from it e.g. a housewife cannot say she is working.

LESSON 12

TOPIC: TIME

COMPETENCY: i) TALK ABOUT DAILY ACTIVITIES
ii) TELL TIME APPORBPRIATELY

Wao hufanya nini? Saa ngapi?

MAZUNGUMZO I - DIOALOGUE I

Ruth:	Hujambo Mary?	***Hallo Mary?***
Mary:	Sijambo Ruth, Habari yako?	***Hallow Ruth, how are you?***
Ruth:	Salama tu.	***Just fine.***
Mary:	Leo uliamka saa ngapi?	***What time did you wake up today?***
Ruth:	Niliamka saa kumi na mbili kamili.	***I woke up at six o'clock.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mary:	Halafu ulifanya nini?	***Then what did you do?***
Ruth:	Nilioga mwili, nikapiga mswaki halafu nikavaa nguo.	***I bathed, brushed my teeth and then dressed up.***
Mary:	Baadaye ulikula chakula cha Asubuhi?	***Later you took breakfast?***
Ruth:	Hapana, kwanza nilichana nywele, nikajipaka mafuta kisha nikanywa chai. Hatimaye nilienda shule	***No, first I combed my hair applied oil and then drank tea. Finally I went to school.***
Mary:	Kila siku nyinyi huanza masomo saa ngapi?	***Everyday what time do you begin classes?***
Ruth:	Kwa kawaida sisi huanza saa mbili kamili. Saa sita na nusu sisi hula chakula cha mchana.	***Usually we start at eight o'clock. At twelve thirty we eat lunch.***
Mary:	Nyinyi humaliza kujifunza saa ngapi?	***What time do you finish classes?***
Ruth:	Sisi humaliza kujifunza saa kumi na nusu, halafu hurudi nyumbani.	***We finish studying at four thirty and then we return home.***

MAZUNGUMZO II - DIALOGUE II

Gina:	Baba, ningependa kujua shughuli zako za kila siku.	***Baba, I would like to know about your daily actitivities.***
Baba:	Shughuli zangu ni nyingi. Unataka kujua nini hasa?	***My activities are many. What exactly do you want to know?***
Gina:	Ningependa kujua wewe huamka saa ngapi?	***I would like to know what time you usually wake up.***
Baba:	Kila siku mimi huamka saa moja kamili.	***Everyday I usually wake up at seven o'clock.***
Gina:	Halafu...	***Then...***
Baba:	Halafu huoga na kunywa chai.	***Then I bathe and drink tea.***
Gina:	Kisha...	***Later...***
Baba:	Kisha huenda kazi saa mbili kamili. - Saa nne na nusu mimi hunywa chai tena, husoma Gazeti	***Later I go to work at eight o'clock At ten thirty, I usually take tea again, read newspapers and*** **chart**

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

	na huzungumza na marafiki juu ya siasa na maendeleo ya wanawake.	***with friends about politics and women in development.***
Gina:	Halafu ...	***Afterwards...***
Gina:	Saa sita kamili mimi huenda nyumbani kwa chakula cha mchana.	***At twelve O'clock I usually go home for lunch.***
Gina:	Wewe hurudi kazini saa ngapi?	***Usually you return to work at what time?***
Baba;	Saa nane kamili mimi hurudi ofisini. Hufanya kazi kidogo halafu hurudi nyumbani saa kumi na moja.	***At two O'clock, I return to the office, work a little bit then return home at five.***
Gina:	Wewe hurudi nyumbani moja kwa moja?	***Do you usually return home straight?***
Baba:	Hapana, kwanza mimi huenda kwa jirani tunazungumza juu ya biashara, pesa, au maisha kwa jumla.	***No, I first go through my neighbours home, we talk about business, money, or life in general.***
Gina:	Baadaye...	***Afterwards...***
Baba:	Baadaye mimi hufika nyumbani saa mbili, hula chakula cha jioni, huongea na watoto juu ya shule halafu huenda kulala.	***Later I arrive home at eight, eat dinner, talk to kids about school then go to sleep.***
Gina:	Asante Baba.	***Thank you, Baba.***
Baba:	Karibu.	***Welcome***

VOCABULARY - MISAMIATI

M-WA

Umoja - Singular	**Wingi - Plural**	**Kingereza - English**
Jirani	Majirani	Neighbours

N - CLASS

Biashara	Biashara	Business
Saa	Saa	Hour
Nusu	Nusu	Half
Robo	Robo	Quarter
Alasiri	Alasiri	Afternoon
Adhuhuri	Adhuhuri	Midday
Nukta	Nukta	Seconds
Dakika	Dakika	Minutes

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Alfajiri	Alfajiri	Dawn
Ofisi	Ofisi	Office
Meza	Meza	Table (V) Swallow
Kazi	Kazi	Work, Job
Shughuli	Shughuli	Activities, Chores
Moto	Moto	Fire
Gazeti	Gazeti	Newspaper(s)

M/MI CLASS

Mkutano	Mikutano	Meeting(s)
Mwili	Miili	Body(ies)
Mswaki	Miswaki	Tooth brush(es)

MA CLASS

Somo	Masomo	Subject(s)
Shambani	Mashambani	at the farms
Maisha	Maisha	Life

U - CLASS

Unywele	Nywele	Hair
Uso	Nyuso	Face(s)

VERBS

- amka — ***Wake up***
- nawa mikono — ***Wash hands***
- washa — ***Light***
- kamua — ***Milk***
- jitayarisha — ***Prepare self***
- ondoka — ***Leave***
- anza — ***Start, begin***
- osha — ***Wash***
- tayarisha — ***prepare***
- fika — ***arrive***
- tafuta — ***search, look for***
- maliza — ***finish***
- piga mswaki — ***brush teeth***
- chana nywele — ***comb hair***
- jipaka mafuta — ***apply oil, lotion***
- oga mwili — ***bathe***
- zungumza — ***converse, discuss***
- ongeza — ***talk***

ADJECTIVE

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Kamili	***Exactly***

EXPRESSIONS

Moja kwa moja	***Straight***
Hasa	***Especially***
Jumla	***Generally***
Saa moja kamili	***Seven O'clock***
Saa mbili	***Eight O'clock***
Saa tatu	***Nine O'clock***
Saa nne	***Ten O'clock***
Saa tano	***Eleven O'clock***

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXPLANATION:

A) THE HU- VERB TENSE (HABITUAL)

The habitual tense is basicially the simplest of all the tenses to use. It doesn't take subject prefixes; its sign is "HU" and it is added as a prefix onto any verb stem. In M/WA Class Nouns, it is usually preceded by Personal Pronouns.

Examples:

If we take the verb Ku-Pe-nda (to like)

We'll have

Mimi hupenda	-	***I usually like.***
Wewe hupenda	-	***You usually like.***
Yeye hupenda	-	***He/she usually likes.***

Positive Plurals:

Sisi huamka	-	***We usually wake up.***
Nyinyi huamka	-	***You (all) usually wake up.***
Wao huamka	-	***They usually wake up.***

Monosyllabic verbs drop their infinitive "KU", examples:

Mimi huja	-	***I normally come***
Wewe hunywa	-	***You normally drink***
Yeye hula	-	***He/she normally eats***.

NEGATION

In the Negative, the habitual tense takes the characteristics of the present continous tense - Na- already explained in a previous lesson. All in all a few examples are given below.

Mimi hula (I usually eat)	- ***Mimi sili (I don't eat).***
Wewe hunywa (you usually drink)	**-Wewe hunywi (you don't drink)**
Yeye huenda (He/she usually goes)	-***Yeye haendi (He/she doesn't go).***

Note that in place of personal pronouns (mimi, wewe, yeye). Names of people could also be used e.g.

Mama huamka mapema.	-	***Mother wakes up early.***
Ruth hulala mapema.	-	***Ruth goes to sleep early.***
Mary husoma vitabu vingi.	-	***Mary reads many books.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

In other noun classs, all you need to do is to replace the particular noun before the verb tense.
For example:

Chakula huiva saa tatu.	-	***The food gets ready at 9.00***
Basi huondoka saa moja.	-	***The bus leaves at 7.00.***
Matatu haifiki mapema.	-	***The matatu doesnt arrive early***

Note:
The habitual tense usually goes with the following phrases:

Kila siku	-	***Every day.***
Kila jumatatu	-	***Every Monday.***
Kila mwaka, mwezi	-	***Every monthyear.***
Kwa kawaida	-	***Usually, normally***
Kila mara	-	***Every time***
Mara nyingi	-	***many times***
Mara kwa mara	-	***oftenly***
Mara nyingine / wakati mwingine		***Some times***

Minutes past the hour are usually counted up to 30. Exaples:
7.15 **would be** saa moja na robo.
7,20 **would be** saa moja na dakika ishirini
7,30 **would be** saa moja na nusu.**From 31 mins onwards, minutes to the following hour are given with the word "kasoro" or "bado", Examples:**

8.40 **would be** saa tatu kasoro / bado dakika ishirini
9.55 **would be** saa nne kasoro / bado dakika tano.

The Narrative tense -ka-
The other grammar, aspect that has been used in this lesson is the narrative tense -ka-. This tense is used to show a series of events happening one after the other in the past. It can be compared to the English 'and then..' or 'then" when narrating a story. Example "Niliamka nikavaa halafu nikaondoka kwenda shule". "I woke up, dressed and then left for school". Before using the -ka- narrative, in a sentence, the first verb is in the past tense -LI-.

Examples:
Nilienda sokoni nikanunua mboga na matunda.
I went to the market (and) bought fruits and vegetables.
Note:
As a tense maker it usually comes after the subject prefixes just like other Swahili tenses.

Examples:

Nikaamka	- ***and then I woke up.***
Nikala	- ***and then I ate***
Nikasoma	- ***and then I read.***

However, this tense does not have a negative marker. Instead it uses the past tense negative -ku- explained in an earlier leson.

Examples:

Nikasoma	-	Sikusoma
Nikalala	-	Sikulala
Nikasoma	-	Sikusoma

MAZOEZI - EXERCISES

ZOEZI 1 - EXERCISE 1.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Jaza nafasi hizi - Fill in the gaps
Mfano - Example:
Gina _____amka saa moja.
Gina huamka saa moja.

1. Sam _____lala saa tatu kila siku.

2. Kila mchana sisi _____pumzika kwa saa moja.

3. Kwa kawaida Tom _____ cheza dansi kila wikendi.
4. Kila jioni Simon _____ jifunza Kiswahili.

5. Kwa kawaida wao _____enda Nairobi wikendi.

EXERCISE II - ZOEZI II

TAFSIRI SENTENSI HIZI - TRANSLATE THESE SENTENSES



1. The teachers work until 4.30 p.m.

2. Usually Evans goes to bed at 11.00 p.m.

3. Now it is twenty -five minues to eight.

4. In America George starts work at 9.00 a.m. but in Kenya he starts at 8.00 a.m.

5. Everyday David rests at 4.00 Oclock.

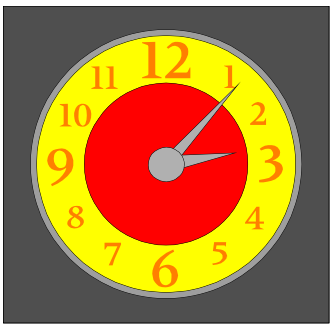
6. In the villages many people tell time by morning, noon evening and night.

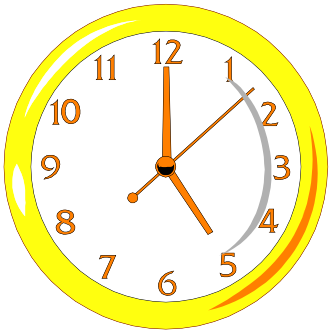
7. Many volunteers do a lot of work everyday.

EXERCISE 3 - ZOEZI 3.

Sasa ni saa ngapi? - **What time is it now?**

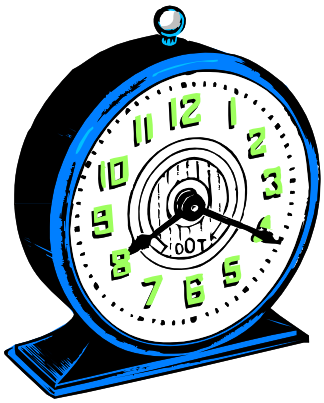




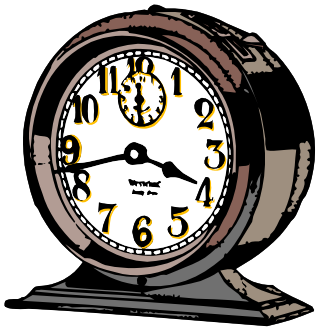


1._____ **2.**_____ **3.**_____

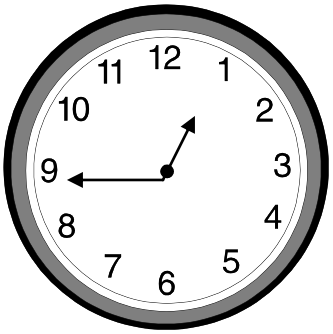
Hosted for free on livelingua.com



4._____



5._____



6._____

Cultural Note:

There is a difference of six hours between the Swahili and English times.

Culturally, indicators used for telling time were things like sunrise, sunset, cockcrow; when cows come in or when chickens go in. Therefore based on this, schedules and deadlines are just approximations. If a meeting was scheduled at 2.00 p.m. and people show up at 2.59p.m. they are not late because it is still within the hour. It's never too late.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 13

TOPIC: LIFE

COMPETENCY: NARATE LIFE HISTORY



Kuzaliwa



Kukua



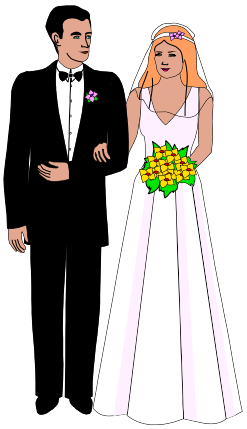
Kwenda Shule



Kuhitimu



Kufanya Kazi



Kuoa



Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Kustaafu

MAZUNGUMZO I - DIALOGUE I

Awuor:	Hujambo bibi?	***Are you well madam?***
John :	Sijambo bwana	***I am well gentleman***
Awuor:	Unaenda wapi?	***Where are you going?***
John :	Ninaenda Kazini.	***I am going to work.***
Awuor:	Unaenda kazini Jumapili?	***You are going to work on Sunday?***
John :	Ndiyo mimi hufanya kazi kutoka Jumatatu mpaka Jumapili. Na wewe?	***Yes, I work from Monday to Sunday, and you?***
Awour:	Mimi hufanya kazi kutoka Jumatatu mpaka Ijumaa	***I work from Monday to Friday.***
John:	Wewe hufanya nini wikendi?	***What do you do on weekend?***
Awuor:	Jumamosi mimi hufua nguo na Jumapili, mimi huenda kanisani. Na wewe hufanya nini kila siku baada ya kazi?	***On Saturday I wash clothes and on Sunday I go to Church. And what do you do every day after work?***
John:	Mimi hupumzika na kutazama televisheni.	***I rest and watch the television.***
Awuor:	Asante	***Thank you.***
John:	Kwaheri	***Goodbye***

MAZUNGUMZO II DIALOGUE II

Awuor:	Habari bwana John?	***How are you Mr. John?***
John:	Nzuri sana	***Very good.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Awuor:	Ulikuja Kenya lini?	***When did you come to Kenya?***
John:	Nilikuja Kenya mwezi wa sita Mwaka huu.	***I came to Kenya in June this year.***
Awuor:	Na utakaa Kenya kwa muda gani?	***And for how long will you stay in Kenya?***
John:	Nitakaa Kenya kwa muda wa miaka miwili.	***I will stay in Kenya for two years.***
Awuor:	Asante	***Thank you.***
John:	Karibu	***Welcome.***

MAZUNGUMZO III DIALOGUE II1

Kamau:	Habari gani?	***What's the news?***
Mary:	Nzuri sana bwana.	***Very good gentleman.***
Kamau:	Unaitwaje?	***What are you called?***
Mary:	Ninaitwa Mary.	***I am called Mary.***
Kamau:	Ulizaliwa lini?	***When were you born?***
Mary:	Nilizaliwa mwaka wa Elfu moja mia tisa sabini na mbili. Kwa hivyo nina miaka ishirini na sita. Na wewe una miaka mingapi?	***I was born in 1972. So I am 26 years old. And how old are you?***
Kamau:	Nina miaka thelathini.	***I am thirty years old.***
Mary:	Ulienda shule wapi?	***Where did you go to school?***
Kamau:	Nilienda shule ya msingi na shule ya Sekondari katika Mombasa, halafu nikahudhuria chuo kikuu katika Nairobi.	***I went to Primary and Secondary Schoo l in Mombasa and I attended university in Nairobi.***
Mary:	Asante	***Thank you***
Kamau:	Karibu	***Welcome.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

NOUNS
M-/MI

Umoja - Singular	Wingi - Plural	Kiingereza - English
Mwezi	Miezi	Month
Mwaka	Miaka	Year

N CLASS

Jumamosi	Jumamosi	Saturday
Jumapili	Jumapili	Sunday
Jumatatu	Jumatatu	Monday
Jumanme	Jumanne	Tuesday
Jumatano	Jumatano	Wednesday
Alhamisi	Alhamisi	Thursday
Ijumaa	Ijumaa	Friday
Siku	Siku	Day
Wiki	Wiki	Week
Sikukuu	Sikukuu	Holiday
Wikendi	Wikendi	Weekend
Shule	Shule	School
Kanisa	Kanisa	Church
Nguo	Nguo	cloth
Televisheni	Televisheni	Television

EXPRESSIONS
Miezi ya Mwaka (Months of the Year)

Mwezi wa kwanza	First month	Januari
Mwezi wa pili	Second month	Februari
Mwezi wa tatu	Third month	Machi
Mwezi wa nne	Fourth month	Aprili
Mwezi wa tano	Fifth month	Mei
Mwezi wa sita	Sixth month	Juni
Mwezi wa saba	Seventh month	Julai
Mwezi wa nane	Eight month	Agosti
Mwezi wa tisa	Nineth month	Septembea
Mwezi wa kumi	Tenth month	Oktoba
Mwezi wa kumi na moja	Eleventh month	Novemba

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mwezi wa kumi na mbili Twelfth month Desemba

VERBS

Osha - **Wash**
Pumzika - **Rest**
Tazama - **Watch**
Zaliwa - **Be born**
Hudhuria - **Attend**

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

THE ADVERB OF TIME -'PO'-

The adverb of time -po- is used in Swahili like in English 'when' as in 'when I was in school". In a verb tense it is inserted between a tense marker and the action verb.

NOTE THAT: The adverb of time -po- is only used in three time frames i.e.

- The present tense -Na-
- The past tense -Li-
- The future tense - TA-

IN PRESENT TENSE ACTION VERB: WE GET: -
For example:

Ninaposoma - ***When I read***
Unaposoma - ***When you read***
Anaposoma - ***When S (he) reads***

IN PAST TENSE WE GET: -
Nilipoamka - ***When I woke up***
Ulipoamka - ***When you woke up***
Alipoamka - ***When s (he) woke up***

However, in the future tense -Ta- an extra element -ka- is inserted between the tense marker -Ta- and -po-.
For example:
Nitakapoenda - ***When I will go***
Utakapoenda - ***When you will go***
Atakapoenda - ***When he/she will go***.

KI CONDITIONAL TENSE - (IF)
In Kiswahili the -Ki- Conditional tense is inserted between the subject prefixes and the verb stems.
Examples:

- Ukienda Nairobi utaona rafiki yako - ***if you go to Nairobi you will see your friend***.

- Nikienda sokoni nitanunua shati - ***if I go to the market I will buy a shirt.***

THE NEGATIVE OF KI CONDITIONAL IS -SIPO- e.g.

- Usipoenda Nairobi hautaona rafiki yako - *If* ***you don't go to Nairobi you will not see your friend.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

- Nisipoenda sokoni sitanunua shati - ***If I don't go to the market I will not buy a shirt.***

THE OTHER USAGE OF KI

- Ki is also used to denote an action that was or will be in a continous state in Swahili, as in English - "I was working". I will be working and " I have been working". Usually in the construction of this sentence, the first verb is the verb "to be" - KUWA.

For Example:

Nilikuwa nikisoma - ***I was reading.***
Ulikuwa ukisoma - ***You were reading***
Alikuwa akisoma - ***She / he was reading.***

NEGATIVE OF KI

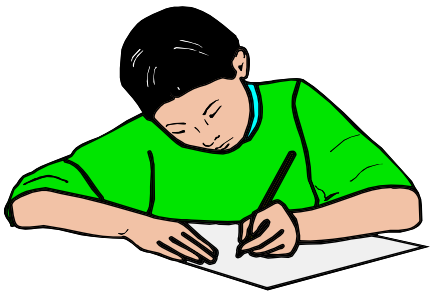
There are two ways of negating the continous state in a verb tense. You can negate the first or the second verb.

For Example:

Sikuwa nikisoma - ***I was not reading***
Hukuwa ukisoma - ***You were not reading***
Hakuwa akisoma - ***S/he was not reading,***

Nilikuwa sisomi
Ulikuwa husomi
Alikuwa hasomi

ZOEZI I - EXERCISE I



Jibu Maswali Haya - Answer these questions

1. Leo ni siku gani?

   _____

2. Kesho itakuwa siku gani? _____
3. Jana ilikuwa siku gani? _____
4. Juzi ilikuwa siku gani? _____
5. Kesho kutwa itakuwa siku gani? _____
6. Huu ni mwezi gani? _____
7. Huu ni mwaka gani? _____

ZOEZI 11 - EXERCISE 11

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

1. Ulikuja Kenya mwezi gani na mwaka gani? _____
2. Ulianza kujifunza Kiswahili lini? _____
3. Ulizaliwa lini? _____
4. Leo ni tarehe ngapi? _____
5. Utakaa Kenya kwa muda gani? _____
6. Utarudi Amerika lini? _____

ZOEZI III - EXERCISE III

Andika Kinyume cha sentense hizi (Write the opposite of the following Sentences)

1. Nilikuwa nikisoma _____
2. Nilikuwa nikicheza _____
3. Wanafunzi walikuwa wakijifunza Kiswahili _____
4. Wazazi wangu walikuwa wakiishi katika Newyork _____

Cultural Note:
In much of rural Africa, inquiring about one's age is a sensitive issue. However, Western influence is definitely having some impact on this aspect of Kenyan behavior especially with regard to women.

Unlike Americans, Kenyans write the month first then the day and lastly the year.

For Example:
Sixth January Nineteen Ninety Eight is written as 6/1/98.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 14

TOPIC: HEALTH

COMPETENCY: EXPRESS HEALTH CONCERNS



MAZUNGUMZO 1 - DIALOGUE 1

Daktari:	Habari yako bwana?	***How are you bwana?***
Simon:	Salama tu; lakini sisikii vizuri.	***just fine but I am not feeling well.***
Daktari:	Una shida gani?	***What problem do you have?***
Simon:	Ninajisikia mnyonge na mwili una maumivu.	***I'm feeling weak and the whole body is aching***
Daktari:	Na unasikia baridi?	***Do you feel cold?***
Simon:	Ndiyo, na hata kizunguzungu.	***Yes and even dizziness.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Daktari:	Ulianza kusikia vibaya lini?	***When did you start feeling bad?***
Simon:	Siku tatu zilizopita.	***Three days ago.***
Daktari:	Unahara?	***Do you have diarrhea?***
Simon:	Ndiyo, kama mara nne kwa siku.	***Yes, like four times a day.***
Dakatri:	Na una umri gani?	***How old are you?***
Simon:	Nina miaka ishirini na tisa.	***I am twenty-nine years.***
Daktari:	Nitapima Choo na damu, halafu nitakupa dawa.	***I'll check your stool and blood and then give you drugs.***
Simon:	Asante bwana Daktari.	***Thank you doctor.***
Daktari:	Utapata sindano mbili sasa na hivi vidonge meza mbili kila siku. Rudi hapa baada ya siku tatu usipopata nafuu.	***You'll get two shots now and you will take this tablets, two every day. Come back after 3 days if you don't get well.***
Simon:	Asante sana.	***Thank you very much.***

MAZUNGUMZO II - DIALOGUE

Jon:	Vipi Joe? Habari ya asubuhi?	***How is it Joe? Good morning!?***
Joe:	Salama tu. Ingawa sikuamka vizuri.	***Just fine although I did not wake up well.***
Jon:	Nini mbaya?	***What is wrong?***
Joe:	Kichwa kinaniuma, tumbo, mgongo na hata viungo vyote ni uchungu.	***My head is aching, stomach back and even all my joints are painful.***
Jon:	Umekula chochote?	***Have you eaten anything?***
Joe:	Bado. Nimepoteza hamu ya chakula	***Not yet. I have lost appetite.***
Jon:	Tunaweza kuenda hospitalini?	***Can we go to the hospital?***
Joe:	Siwezi hata kusimama. Miguu inatetemeka.	***I can't even stand. My legs are shaking.***
Jon:	Hebu nirudi nyumbani kuleta baiskeli, ili nikupeleke hospitali.	***Let me return home and bring a bicycle so that I can take you to the hospital.***
Jon:	Asante sana	***Thank you very much.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

NOUNS
M- /WA CLASS

Mgonjwa	Wagonjwa	Patient(s)

KI/VI CLASS

Kichocho		Bilharzia
Kiungo	Viungo	Joints
Kichwa	Vichwa	Head(s)
Kizunguzungu		Dizziness
Choo	Vyoo	Latrine(s)
Kidonge	Vidonge	Tablets /pills

M / MI CLASS

Mwili	Miili	Body (ies)
Mgongo	Migongo	Back(s)
Mguu	Miguu	Leg(s)

JI - MA CLASS

Daktari	Madaktari	Doctor(s)
Tumbo	Matumbo	Stomachs
Malaria	Malaria	Malaria
Mafua		Colds

N / NOUNS CLASS

Hospitali	Hospitali	Hospital
Dawa	Dawa	Drugs, medicine
Choo	Choo	Stool, Shit, Feeces
Sindano	Sindano	Injection, Shot(s)
Damu	Damu	Blood
Nguvu	Nguvu	Strength
Pepopunda		Tetanus
Ukambi	-	Measles
Homa	-	Fever

VERBS

- amka	wake up/Arise
- pona	get well/cure/heal
- sumbua	bother
- pimwa	be examined
- meza	swallow
- tetemeka	shake, shiver
- umwa	be pained ache
- ambukiza	spread, infect

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

- tapika	vomit, puke, throw up
- hara	diarrhoea
- fura	swell
- sikia	hear, feel
- nusa	smell
- shika	touch, hold
- sema	talk, speak, say
-tafuna	chew

EXPRESSIONS

Kupata nafuu	to get well
Ninasikia maumivu, uchungu	I'm having pains

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION:
THE PASSIVE VERBS:
In this unit, we find constructions like:

Ninaumwa na	-	***I am being pained by***
Utapimwa	-	***You will be examined***
Utapelekwa	-	***You will be taken***

Constructions of these kinds are called **Passive Constructions.**

1. Verbs of Bantu origin that end in 'a' are changed into passive by the addition of infix -w- just before the final vowel - "A" of the verb.

Examples:

Active	**Passive**	**Meaning**
Kuuma	Kuuma	to be pained
Kupeleka	Kupelekwa	to be taken
Kuandika	Kuandikwa	to be written
Kupika	Kupikwa	to be cooked
Kukata	Kukatwa	to be cut

Chakula kilipikwa na mama ***The food was cooked by mother***

2. The verbs that end in double vowels "OA" in the passive form, the final -A- is replaced by "LEWA" for example

Active	**Passive**	**Meaning**
Kuoa	Kuolewa	to be married
Kuondoa	Kuondolewa	to be removed
Kutoa	Kutolewa	to be taken out
Kungoa	Kungolewa	to be uprooted

Nilingolewa jino na daktari - ***My tooth was uprooted by the doctor***

3. VERBS ENDING IN "UA" or "AA". Here in the passive the final -A- is replaced by "LIWA". For example.

Active	**Passive**	**Meaning**
Kuua	Kuuliwa	to be killed
Kununua	Kununuliwa	to be bought
Kuzaa	Kuzaliwa	to be born

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Kukaa	Kukaliwa	to be sat on
Chakula kilinunuliwa na mkubwa	***The food was bought by the boss.***	

4. VERBS ENDING IN 'I' OR 'E'

For all the verbs in this category -**"WA" i**s suffixed Examples.

Active	**Passive**	**English**
Kutaliki	Kutalikiwa	(to be divorced)
Kufasiri	Kufasiriwa	(to be translated)
Kusamehe	Kusamehewa	(to be forgiven)

5. VERBS ENDING IN "U" PROCEDED BY A CONSONANT.

In this case the Final "U" is replaced by "IWA" Examples:

Active	**Passive**	**English**
Kuhukumu	Kuhukumiwa	(to be judged)
Kujibu	Kujibiwa	(to be answered)
Kajaribu	Kujaribiwa	(to be tried)
Kuhesabu	Kuhesabiwa	(to be counted)

Note:

Monosyllabic Verbs have each their own version.

e.g. Kula changes to kuliwa - ***to be eaten***

Kunywa changes to kunywewa - ***to be drunk (not intoxicated)***

Note: Usually passive verbs are followed by a conjunction such as "by" or 'with', i.e.

Mtoto alikatwa kwa kisu - ***The child was cut with a knife.***

Chakula kilipikwa na mpishi - ***The food was cooked by the Chef***

If the conjunction refers to human, the word used is 'na' and if it refers to things, then the word used is 'kwa'.



ZOEZI 1- EXERCISE 1

Tafsiri sentensi hizi - Translate these sentenses

1. If people eat vegetables and fruits, they will be healthy.

2. If people feel cold, they can get colds.

3. You need to boil drinking water inorder to prevent water borne diseases.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

4. If you have diarrhea you must drink a lot of water.

5. If your joints are aching you need to see a doctor.

6. Joe has lost appetite.

7. That patient should eat alot of fruits.

8. If people don't use their toilets well they'll get many diseases.

9. If you drink dirty water, you'll get typhoid.

10. If you don't wash your hands before eating you will have stomachache.

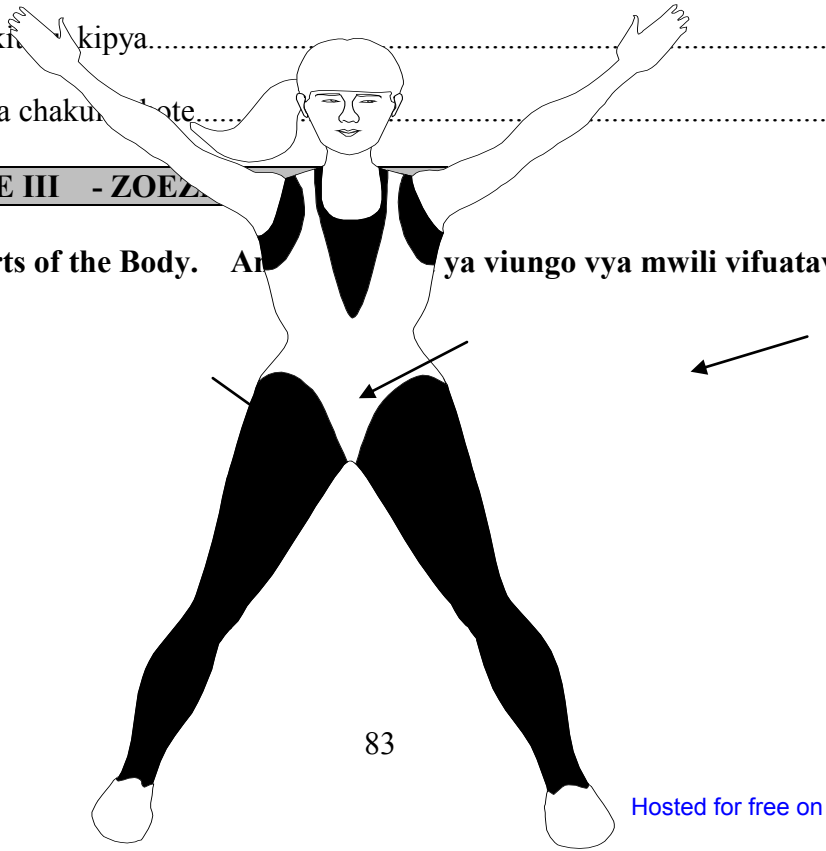
EXERCISE I1 - ZOEZI II

Write the passives of the following sentenses:

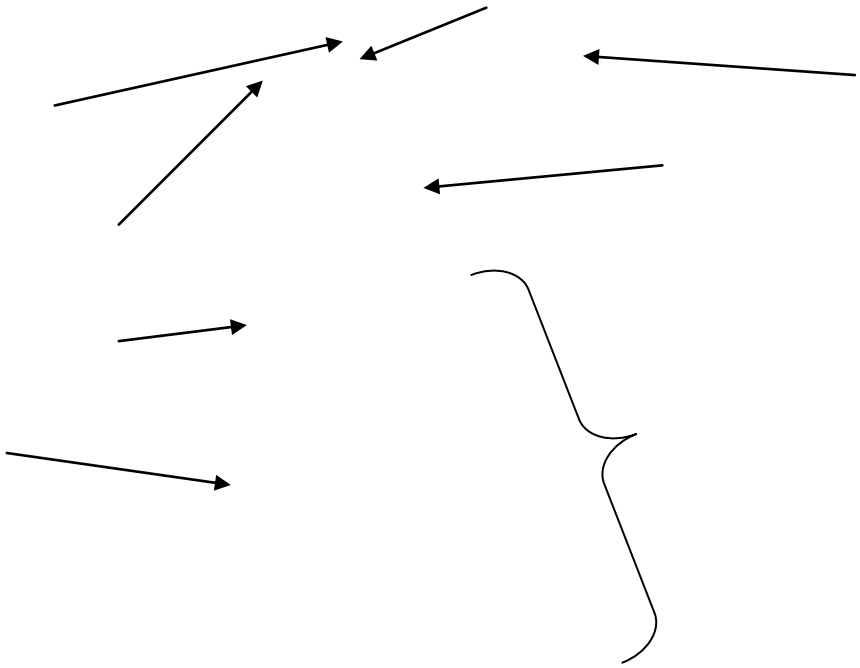
1. Otieno alimpiga Kimani.....
2. Nyoka alimwuma mtoto wa jirani.....
3. Mama amepeleka mtoto hospitali.....
4. Wapishi walipika chakula kingi.....
5. Alice alisafisha chumba cha wageni.....
6. Ken alijibu maswali yote.....
7. Mkubwa alimsamehe askari aliyeiba.....
8. Hakimu alimhukumu mwizi yule.....
9. Walimu waliandika ki kipya.....
10. Mzungu alinunua chaku ote.....

EXERCISE III - ZOEZ

Name the following parts of the Body. Ar ya viungo vya mwili vifuatavyo



Hosted for free on livelingua.com



EXERCISE IV - ZOEZI IV

Maliza Sentensi zifuatazo ukitumia viungo vya mwili (Complete the following sentences using parts of the body)

1. Tunaona Kwa _____
2. Tunasikia kwa _____
3. Tunatembea kwa _____
4. Tunakaa kwa _____
5. Tunashika kwa _____
6. Tunakula kwa _____
7. Tunatafuna kwa_____
8. Tunanusa kwa _____
9. Tunaandika kwa _____
10. Tunabeba mizigo kwa _____

Cultural Note

- Inquiring about each other shealth and expressing sympathy for one another important aspects of social interactions.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

- People frequently visit their sick friends, relatives workmates or neighbours to give needed support, or help, and wish them quick recovery.
- People are usually visited alot and are always with people when they are sick, hence it'll be hard to convince them to leave you alone, for personal space.
- It's appreciated if you give money or food to sick friends.
- Being big / heavy is a sign of wealth and health.
- In some societies, when someone dies from certain diseases, people believe that they have been bewitched.

LESSON 15

TOPIC: DIRECTIONS

COMPETENCY: ASK, GIVE AND FOLLOW DIRECTIONS

MAZUNGUMZO 1 - DIALOGUE 1

Lusimba:	Habari yako?	***How are you?***
Ezekiel:	Salama sana. Naweweje?	***Very well, and you?***
Lusimba:	Fiti sana.	***Very well.***
Ezekiel:	NInaweza kukusaidia?	***Can I help you?***
Lusimba:	Ndiyo	***Yes.***
Ezekiel:	Unashida gani?	***What problem do you have?***
Lusimba:	Mimi ni mgeni hapa Naivasha na ninataka kwenda posta. Tafadhali nionyeshe njia.	***I am a visitor here in Naivasha and I want to go to the Post Office. Please show me the way.***
Ezekiel:	Fuata hii barabara ya biashara. Hapo mbele kidogo, utaona makutano ya barabara. Pinda kulia halafu nenda moja kwa moja. Mbele kidogo, utaona Posta iko karibu na	***Follow this biashara street, a little bit** infront **of you, you will see the road junction. Turn right then go straight. Infront you will see the Post Office. It is near the Barclays Bank.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

	Benki ya Barclays.	
Lusimba:	Ni mbali sana?	***Is it very far?***
Ezekiel:	Hapana ni karibu sana. Kutembea ni kama dakika tano tu.	***No it's very near. It is about five minutes walk.***
Lusimba:	Asante sana.	***Thank very much***
Ezekiel:	Karibu	***Welcome***

MAZUNGUMZO 2 - DIALOGUE 2

Ezekiel:	Habari za asubuhi Bwana Moses	***Good morning Mr. Moses.***
Moses:	Salama.	***Fine***
Ezekiel:	Mwanafunzi Tina yuko wapi?	***Where is Tine the student?***
Moses:	Yuko darasani.	***She is in class***
Ezekiel:	Jana alikuwa wapi?	***Where was she yesterday?***
Moses:	Alikuwa nyumbani.	***She was at home.***
Ezekiel:	Kwa nini hakuja darasani jana?	***Why did she not come to class yesterday?***
Moses:	Anasema alikuwa mgonjwa.	***She says she was sick.***
Ezekiel:	Sasa anaendeleaje na masomo?	***How is she doing in lessons.***
Moses:	Vizuri tu.	***Very well***
Ezekiel:	Haya asante kwa habari.	***Thanks for the news***
Moses:	Asante kwaheri.	***Thanks and goodbye.***

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

PREPOSITIONS:

Kiswahili	**English Equivalent**
karibu na	Near
mbele ya	Infornt of
nyuma ya	behind
nje ya	out of / outside of
ndani ya	in/inside of
mbali na	Far from
baina ya	Between / in between / among
kati ya / katikati ya	in the middle of

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

VERBS:

Kiswahili	**English Equivalent**
nionyeshe	show me
fuata	follow
pinda	turn
kata	cut/turn
tembea	walk
niambie	tell me
kuwa	to be

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXPLANATION

In this lesson, we have used the prepositions:

nyuma ya	-	behind of
mbele ya	-	infront of.
karibu na	-	near by
chini ya	-	under
juu ya	-	on top of
mbali na	-	far from
baina ya	-	between
katikati ya	-	in the middle of

1) These prepositions are equivalent to English to, for, in, anbout, etc. In Kiswahili language, prepositions were originally adverbs and the "ya" itself makes them prepositions. The preposition like "karibu" which is an adverb taken from the Arabic is followed by "NA". So the adverb "Karibu" becomes "karibu na" meaning near by something and "mbali: takes either "Na" or "ya". So "mbali na" will mean far from something. Here are some examples of usage of preposition shown above.

Mwalimu alisimama mbele ya watoto	-	***The teacher stood infront of the children.***
Kikombe kiko chini ya kiti	-	***The cup is under the chair***
Tom yuko karibu na ubao	-	***Tom is near the blackboard.***

2) We have the locative -ko- it is important to note that it is only used in present for example;

M/WA Class:

Niko darasani	-	***I am in class.***
Uko darasani	-	***You are in class.***
Yuko darasani	-	***He/she is in class.***

Plurals:

Tuko nyumbani	-	***We are at home***
Mko nyumbani	-	***You (Plural) are at home.***
Wako nyumbani	-	***We are at home.***

In past and future tenses, the verb "kuwa" in the locative form is used.
For example: In the past tense we get the following:

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

M/WA CLASS
Singular

Jana nilikuwa nyumbani	-	***Yesterday I was at home.***
Jana ulikuwa nyumbani	-	***Yesterday you were at home.***
Jana alikuwa nyumbani	-	***Yesterday he/she was at home.***

Plurals:

Jana tulikuwa nyumbani	-	***Yesterday we were at home.***
Jana mlikuwa nyumbani	-	***Yesterday you (pl) were at home.***
Jana walikuwa nyumbani	-	***They were at home***

FUTURE TENSE "A"
M/WA CLASS

Kesho nitakuwa darasani	-	***Tommorrow I will be in class.***
Kesho utakuwa darasani	-	***Tommorow you will be in class.***
Kesho atakuwa darasani	-	***Tommorrow he/she will be in class***

Plural

Kesho tutakuwa darasani	-	***Tommorrow we will be in class***
Kesho mtakuwa darasani	-	***Tommorrow you (pl) will be in class***
Kesho watakuwa darasani	-	***Tommorrow they will be in class***

MAZOEZI YA SARUFI - GRAMMAR EXERCISES



ZOEZI 1 - EXERCISE 1:

From the words in brackets choose the correct form of the locative -KO- enclitic and complete the sentences below.

1. Mtoto - Chini ya meza (iko, kiko, yuko)
2. Kitabu - Juu ya kiti (yuko, ziko, kiko)
3. Posta - Karibu na Benki (uko, iko, kiko)
4. Mama - Nyumbani (niko, iko, yuko)
5. Watoto - Shuleni (ziko, viko, wako)
6. Mti - karibu na nyumba (uko, iko, liko)
7. Mimi - Darasani (yuko, tuko, niko)
8. Mayai - jikoni (yako, liko, ziko)
9. Nguo - kabatini (viko, ziko, iko).
10. Kalamu - mbali na kitabu (yuko, liko, iko).

ZOEZI 2 - EXERCISE 2

Turn these sentecnes into Kiswahili - Geuza sentensi hizi kwa Kiswahili

1. Yesterday I was at home.
2. Tommorrow I will be a home
3. I was here yesterday morning.
4. The child will be at school.
5. The teachers were in class.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

6. Students will not be in Malaika.
7. Tommorrow morning I will be in Nairobi.
8. John will not be in class
9. My mother will not be at home tommorrow.

Cultural Note:

In most African countries, directions are usually given using landmarks for example Bridges, rivers or a big tree, building etc. It is rare to hear Kenyans using names of streets, roads and maps when giving directions to a place. Although it varies with particular
Ethnic groups, disctance could be nearer or farther than in actual kilometers. Please
Clarify this with your language trainers and compare differences.

LESSON 16

TOPIC: TRANSPORTATION

COMPTENCY: MAKE BUS AND TRAIN RESERVATION



MAZUNGUMZO I - DIALOGUE I

Kamau:	Habari za leo?	***How are things today?***
Maria:	Nzuri sana.	***Very good.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Kamau:	Ninataka kwenda Mombasa kwa basi, ninaweza kupata tikiti?	***I want to go to Mombasa by Bus. Can I get a ticket?***
Maria:	Unataka kusafiri lini?	***When do you want to travel?***
Kamau:	Ninataka kusafiri Jumamosi.	***I want to travel on Saturday.***
Maria:	Ndio unaweza kupata.	***Yes you can get it.***
Kamau:	Nauli ni pesa ngapi?	***How much is the fare?***
Maria:	Ni shilingi mia tatu.	***It is three hundred shillings.***
Kamau:	Basi litaondoka saa ngapi?	***What time will the Bus leave?***
Maria:	Moja litaondoka saa moja asubuhi na lingine litaondoka saa mbili usiku.	***One will leave at seven in the morning and another one will leave at 8.00 p.m.***
Kamau:	Basi la kwanza hufika Mombasa saa ngapi?	***When does the first Bus arrive Mombasa?***
Maria:	Hufika saa sita mchana.	***It arrives at 12.00 noon.***
Kamau:	Ninataka kusafiri kwa basi la kwanza, kuna nafasi?	***I want to travel by the first Bus, is there space?***
Maria:	Ndio kuna nafasi.	***Yes, there is space?***
Kamau:	Nipe tikiti moja.	***Give me one ticket.***
Maria:	Chukua.	***Take.***
Kamau:	Asante.	***Thank you.***

MAZUNGUM`ZO II - DIALOGUE II

John:	Sasa?	***What's up?***
Awuor:	Fiti sana. Ninaweza kukusaidia?	***Very well. Can I help you?***
John:	Ndio, ninataka kununua tikiti ya kwenda Nairobi.	***I want to buy a ticket to go to Nairobi.***
Awuor:	Ungetaka kusafiri lini?	***When would you like to travel?***
John:	Kesho saa mbili asubuhi.	***Tomorrow at 8.00 a.m.***
Awuor:	Pole bwana, basi la kwanza limejaa lakini kuna nafasi katika basi la pili. Unaweza kusafiri saa nane?	***sorry gentleman, the first bus is full but there is a space in the second bus. Can you travel at 2.00 p.m.?***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

John:	Ni sawa. Hakuna shida. Ni pesa ngapi?	***It's okey. No problem. How much is it?***
Awuor:	Ni shilingi mia moja. Una mizigo?	***It is one hundred. Do you have luggages?***
John:	Ndio, mfuko mmoja.	***Yes. One bag.***
Awuor:	Basi, jaribu kuwa hapa kesho kabla ya saa nane.	***Then, try to be here tommorrow before 2.00 p.m.***
John:	Sawa sawa, kwaheri tutaonana kesho.	***Okey. Bye, see you tommorrow.***

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

NOUNS
M - MI

Umoja - Singular	**Wingi - Plural**	**Kingereza - English**
Mfuko	Mifuko	Bag
Mzigo	Mizigo	Luggage

N CLASS

Umoja - Singular	**Wingi - Plural**	**Kingereza - English**
Tikiti	Tikiti	Ticket
Nauli	Nauli	Fare
Nafasi	Nafasi	Space

VERBS

Ku- pata	to get
Ku- safiri	to travel
Ku-ondoka	to leave
Ku-fika	to arrive
Ku-saidia	to help
Ku-weza	to be able

MAZOEZI - EXERCISE

ZOEZI 1 - EXERCISE

Tafsiri Sentensi sifuatazo - Translate the following sentences:

1. How much is the fare from Nairobi to Mombasa. _____

2. At what time will the first bus leave? _____

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

3. At what time will the bus arrive? _____

4. I want one ticket only. _____

5. Are there seats in this bus? _____

6. I want a front seat? _____

7. Which bus is going to Nairobi _____

8. Who is selling the tickets? _____

ZOEZI II - EXERCISE II

Jifunze Chati iliyo hapa chini na ujibu maswali yafuatayo. Study the Chart below and answer the following questions.

Kusafiri kwa basi - ***Travelling by bus***

Miji Towns	Nauli Fare	Muda wa Kuondoka Time of departure	Muda wa kufika Time of arrival
Nairobi - Mombasa	1300/=	8.00 Asubuhi	12.00 Mchana
Kisumu - Nairobi	400/=	10.00 Asubuhi	2.00 Mchana
Eldoret - Kisumu	300/=	9.00 Jioni	11.00 Jioni
Nairobi - Busia	450/=	12.00 Mchana	5.00 Jioni
Loitokitok - Nairobi	600/=	7.00 Asubuhi	4.00 Jioni
Busia - Kisumu	300/=	7.00 Asubuhi	10.00 Asubuhi

1. Nauli ya basi kutoka Kisumu mpaka Mombasa ni pesa ngapi? _____

2. Basi kutoka Loitokitok mpaka Nairobi hufika saa ngapi? _____

3. Basi kutoka Nairobi mpaka Mombasa huondoka saa ngapi? _____

4. Nauli ya basi kutoka Busia mpaka Kisumu ni pesa ngapi? _____

5. Basi kutoka Eldoret mpaka Kisumu huchukua muda gani? _____

6. Basi kutoka Nairobi mpaka Busia huondoka saa ngapi na hufika saa ngapi? _____

ZOEZI IIII - EXERCISE III

Tafsiri Sentensi hizi - Translate the following sentences.

1. Nauli ya kwenda na kurudi ni pesa ngapi? _____

2. Ningetaka kuketi karibu na dirisha. _____

3. Matatu huchukua muda gani kutoka Nairobi mpaka Kitui? _____

4 Gari la moshi limeondoka _____

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

5. Ninapenda kusafiri usiku _____

6. Basi limejaa hakuna nafasi _____

7. Ninataka kununua tikiti za watu wawili _____

Cultural Note:
"A Matatu is never full" Even if it is full, the touts will always push people to get in. Usually, there is no personal space in public transport.
At times when you go to a Bus Stage the touts will run to you, grab your luggages and take them to their respective vehicles expecting you to follow them. Watch out!

LESSON 17

TOPIC: WEATHER

COMPTENCY: DESCRIBE WEATHER CONDITIONS









Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE

Awuor:	Hali ya hewa leo ni nzuri kuliko jana.	***Today the weather is better than yesterday.***
Nzioka:	Ndiyo. Leo ni baridi kidogo. Jana ilikuwa joto kali sana. Lakini kwa kawaida wakati wa kiangazi jua ni kali na kuna joto jingi.	***Yes, Today is a bit cold. Yesterday it was very hot but usually during summer the sun is very hot.***
Awuor:	Kiangazi inaanza lini?	***When does summer begin?***
Nzioka:	Kiangazi ni mwezi wa kwanza mpaka wa tatu. Baada ya kiangazi ni masika.	***Summer is from January to March. After summer is the rainy season.***
Awuor:	Masika huwa vipi?	***How is the rainy season?***
Nzioka:	Masika ni majira ya mvua nyingi sana. Wakati huo watu hupanda mimea mbalimbali. Pia kuna matope mengi sana.	***During the rainy season there is alot of rain. People plant different crops and there is alot of mud.***
Awuor:	Mna majira mangapi?	***How many seasons do you have?***
Nzioka:	Katika Kenya tuna majira manne. Baada ya masika kuna kipupwe ambayo ni mwezi	***In Kenya we have four seasons. after the rainy season there is Winter which is in July and it***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

	wa saba na huwa na baridi sana.	***is usually very cold.***
Awuor:	Na majira ya nne ni gani?	***And which is the fourth season?***
Nzioka:	Majira ya nne ni ya vuli kutoka mwezi wa kumi hadi kumi na mbili.	***The fourth season fall from October to December.***
Awuor:	Ehe! Hali ya hewa huwa vipi?	***Ehe! How is the weather?***
Nzioka:	Huwa na mvua ndogo na za muda mfupi.	***Usually there is a little rain and for a short time.***
Awuor:	Oh! Asante sana kwa mazungumzo hayo mazuri.	***Oh! Thank you very much for that conversation.***

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

NOUNS
N CLASS

Umoja - Singular	**Wingi - Plural**	**Kingereza - English**
Kiangazi	Kiangazi	Summer
Vuli	Vuli	Fall/Autumn
Masika	Masika	Rainy season/spring
KIpupwe	Kipupwe	Winter
Theluji	Theluji	Snow
Jua	Jua	Sun
Majira	Majira	Season
Mvua	Mvua	Rain
Upepo	Upepo	Wind
Vumbi	Vumbi	Dust

M/ MI CLASS

Umoja - Singular	**Wingi - Plural**	**Kingereza - English**
Mmea	Mimea	Plan / crop

MA CLASS

Umoja - Singular	**Wingi - Plural**	**Kingereza - English**
Tope	Matope	Mud
Wingu	Mawingu	Cloud

ADJECTIVES

Kiswahili	**English**
Joto	hot

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Baridi	cold
Jingi	alot
Kali	very strong

ADVERB

Mbali mbali	different types

VERBS

- Panda	plant, climb
- Nyesha	rain

EXPRESSIONS

Hali ya hewa	air condition (weather)
Hadi	upto / until

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - ***GRAMMAR EXPLANATION ADJECTIVES AND AGREEMENTS***

In this lesson we have used adjectives like - ingi, kali, baridi etc. In Kiswahili adjectives come in three categories as was explained in lesson five i.e. prefix-dependent adjectives beginning with a consonant, prefix-dependent adjectives begining with vowels and prefix independent adjectives. Following are examples of the adjectives under each category.

1. Prefix - dependent adjectives beginning with a consonant.

- zuri	- good, nice, fine beutiful, plesant
- baya	- bad
- bichi	- raw/unripe, uncooked
- bivu	- ripe
- chache	- few
- chafu	- dirty
- changa	- young
- chungu	- bitter, painful
- dogo	- small, little
- fupi	- short
- geni	- new, strange, foreign
- gumu	- hard, difficult
- janja	- cunning, cheeky, clever
- jinga	- studip, ignorant, follish
- kali	- fierce, sharp, strict
- kubwa	- big
- kuu	- great, mighty
- kukuu	- old, tartered
- moja	- one
- nane	- eight
- ngapi	- how many
- nne	- four
- nono	- fat (animals)
- nene	- fat, stout (people)
- nyonge	- weak, feeble, unhealthy
- pana	- wide, broad
- pole	- slow, polite
- pya	- new, fresh
- refu	- long

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

- tamu - sweet, delicious
- tano - five
- tatu - three
- tupu - empty, bare
- tulivu - patient, calm, peaceful
- wili - two
- zee - old
- zima - whole (living beings)
- zito - heavy

II. Prefix dependent adjectives beginning with a vowel

- aminifu - honest, faithful, trustworthy
- ema - good, kind (in character)
- embamba - thin, slender, slim, narrow
- ekundu - red
- epesi - light (in weight) quick, fast
- erevu - clever, cunning (same as janja)
- eupe - white
- eusi - black
- ingi - many, much
- ingine - another, others
- ororo - soft, tender
- ovu - evil

III Prefix - Independent Adjectives - These are usually of origin.

Bora - excellent, better, best, of high quality
Dhaifu - weak
Ghali - Expensive
Haba - a little, few, lacking
Halali - lawful
Huru - free
Hodari - efficient, able, clever, active, strong.
Kamili - Exact, complete
Laini - soft, tender (same as ororo)
Imara - firm, strong
Hafifu - weak, poor, feeble
Kadha wa kadha - several, various
Kila - every, each
gani - what kind of, sort of
Maridadi / Malidadi - beautiful, fancy, adorned
Maskini - poor
Maarufu - famous, well known
Mashuhuri - important, distinguished
Nadhifu - tidy, neat
Safi - clean
Tajiri - wealthy, rich
Shujaa - brave, courageous
Sita - six
Saba - seven
Tisa - nine
Rahisi - cheap, easy

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Tofauti - different
Mbalimbali - different / various
Kumi - ten

Note:

The adjectival agreements or prefixes are usually the same in form as the noun prefixes. They are used to bring the adjectival stems into agreement with the nouns as in the following examples:

Mtoto mdogo	-	a little child
Watoto wadogo	-	little children
Mti mrefu	-	a tall tree
Miti mirefu	-	tall trees
Kisu kikali	-	a sharp knife
Visu vikali	-	sharp knives
Chumba kichafu	-	a dirty room
Vyumba vichafu	-	dirty rooms



ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE

Jibu Maswali haya - ***Answer these questions.***

1. Hali ya hewa iko vipi leo? _____
2. Unapenda hali ya hewa gani na kwa nini? _____
3. Hali ya hewa katika jimbo lako iko vipi sasa? _____
4. Majira ya masika huwa vipi? _____
5. Majira ya kiangazi huanza lini mpaka lini? _____
6. Sasa ni majira gani hapa? _____

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE TWO

Linganisha hali ya hewa hapa Kenya na hali ya hewa katika America (Compare and contrast the weather in Kenya and in America)

ZOEZI LA TATU - EXERCISE THREE

Andika habari hii kwa kutafsiri maneno yote ya kiingereza katika kiswahili.
(Complete the passage by translating English words into Kiswahili)

Maria ni mtoto **honest** sana. Yeye ni mrefu na **thin,** pia ni **clever**. Juzi jioni Maria alichukua vitabu **two** kimoja **black** and kingine **white**. Kitabu **black** ni **big** kwa hivyo ni **heavy** lakini kitabu **white** ni **light.** Baada ya kuchukua vitabu Maria alikwenda baharini. Alipitia katika barabara **narrow** ambayo ina udongo **red.** Hakuogelea baharini kwa sababu maji yalikuwa na rangi **black**

ZOEZI LA NNE - EXERCISE FOUR

Kutoka kwa jedwali andika vitu ambavyo Baraka huvipenda na ambavyo havipendi:
(From the Chart write the things, which Baraka likes and which he doesn't

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

	-embamba	-ekundu	-eupe	-eusi	-epesi
Rangi		_/	_/	x	
Msichana	_/				_/
Magari		x	_/	x	1
Nguo	_/	_/		x	x
Mvinyo	_/		_/		x
Nyumba		_/		x	
Kitabu		_/	_/	_/	_/
Vitabu		_/	_/	x	_/

Mfano:
Baraka hupenda rangi nyekundu na nyeupe lakini hapendi rangi nyeusi.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

ZOEZI LA TANO - EXERCISE FIVE

Tumia adjectives ulizopewa chini kukamilisha sentensi zifuatazo: (***Use the adjectives given below to complete the following sentences)*** bure, ghali, hodari, kamili, kila, laini, rahisi, tele

1. _____ mwaka wakulima hupanda mazao.

2. Sikuinunua redio hii niliipata _____.
iophyuioj

3. Nitakwenda shuleni saa mbili _____.

4. Mkulima _____ alipata mazao mengi.

5. Hapa Kenya matunda ni bei _____ kuliko marekani.

6. Maasai mara hura wanyama _____.

7. Wazee hupenda kula nyama _____.

8. Ni _____ kujifunza Kiswahili.

Cultural Note: There are only two distinct seasons in Kenya namely hot and dry and cold and wet.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 18

TOPIC: CLOTHES AND COLOURS

COMPETENCY: DESCRIBE ARTICLES OF CLOTHING AND COLOURS.

MAZUNGUMZO I - DIALOGUE I

Awuor:	Sasa Jean?	***Hi Jean?***
Jean:	Fiti sana.	***Very fit.***
Awuor:	Una skati maridadi sana. Uliinunua wapi?	***You have a very beautiful Skirt. Where did you buy it?***
Jean:	Niliinunua sokoni kwa mtumba	***I bought it at the market, it's a used one (second hand)***
Awuor:	Ninapenda rangi yake.	***I like its colours.***
Jean:	Mimi pia. Ninapenda buluu na waridi.	***me too, I like blue & pink***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Awuor:	Uliinunua pesa ngapi?	***How much did you buy it?***
Jean:	Shilingi mia moja na hamsini tu!	***A hundred and fifty shillings only.***
Awuor:	Mmh! Ni bei rahisi sana. Utanipeleka hapo? Ningependa kununua pia.	***Very cheap.*** ***Will you take me there?*** ***I would like to buy .***
Jean:	Sawa nitakupeleka Jumatano ijayo.	***I will take you there next Wednesday.***

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

KI/VI - CLASS

Kiatu	Viatu	Shoes
Kipuli	Vipuli	Ear rings
Kitambaa	Vitambaa	Head Scarf
Kikoi	Vikoi	A piece of cloth used by men
Kinyasa	Vinyasa	shorts

M/MI CLASS

Umoja - Singular	**Wingi - Plural**	**Kingereza - English**
Mshipi	Mishipi	Belts
Mtumba	Mitumba	Used clothes

N CLASS

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Soksi	Soksi	Socks
Blausi	Blausi	Blouse
Skati	Skati	skirt
Shati	Shati	Shirt
Kofia	Kofia	Hat, Cap
Tai	Tai	Tie
Leso/Kanga	Leso/Kanga	Piece of cloth used by women
Suti	Suti	Suit
Sweta	Sweta	Sweater
Koti	Koti	Coat
Jaketi	Jaketi	Jacket
Kamisi	Kamisi	Slip
Chupi	Chupi	Underwear
Sindilia	Sindilia	Brazier
Nguo	Nguo	Dress/Cloth
Fulana	Fulana	Vest
Kanzu	Kanzu	Gown worn by Muslim men
Patipati	Patipati	Slippers
Buibui	Buibui	Black long dress worn by Muslim women
Pete	Pete	Ring
Saa	Saa	Watch
Bangili	Bangili	Bangle(s)
Miwani	Miwani	Spectacles

VERBS

Kuvaa - to wear

Adjectives

-eupe	White
-eusi	Black
-ekundu	Red
Machungwa	Orange
Manjano	Yellow
Kijani kibichi	Green
Buluu	Blue
Waridi	Pink
Zambarao	Purple
Kahawa / kahawia	Brown
Kijivu	Grey
Samawati	Light Blue
Dhahabu	Gold
Fedha	Silver
Almasi	Diamond
Madoadoa	Spots
Mistari	Stripe

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION - MAELEZO YA SARUFI

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Apart from -eusi, -eupe, -ekundu which are prefix dependent. Other colours are Underpendent, for example:

Mtu mweusi	-	Watu weusi
Kitabu chekundu	-	Vitabu vyekundu
Kalamu nyeusi	-	Kalamu nyeusi.

Nguo ya kijani kibichi
Shati la manjano.
However, when modifying nouns, connectors are used -ya (of) to which appropriate prefixes are attached examples.
Hence:

Nguo ya kijani kibichi	-	Nguo za kijani kibichi.
Shati la manjano	-	Mashati ya manjano.
Kiatu cha waridi	-	Viatu vya waridi.

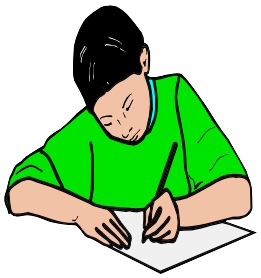
However, undependent colours are frequently used as adjectival phrases, **for examples.**

Nguo ya rangi ya buluu	-	**A blue cloth / pieces of clothing**
Shati la rangi ya manjano		**A yellow shirt.**
Kiatu cha waridi	-	**A yellow shirt.**
Skati ya rangi ya zambarau		**A purple skirt.**

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE

Jaza nafasi hizi - Complete ***the following sentences using the correct noun agreement***
Example:
Mwalimu wangu amevaa viatu ____kundu. -Mwalimu wangu amevaa viatu vyekundu.

1. Paka wako ni _____eupe si _____eusi.
2. Kijana huyu amevaa viatu ____eusi.
3. Kuna watu ____ eusi wengi katika Amerika.
4. Kwa nini watu wanaoishi jangwani huvaa nguo ____eupe?
5. Koti la Ezekiel ni _____ ekundu
6. Mwalimu wake amevaa shati _____ rangi _____kijani kibichi.
7. Hana mashati ____eupe lakini nina shati _____rangi ____ kijivu.



Cultural Note:

- People dress for others. You dress according to who you are going to meet i.e. special occasions like graduation, parties, ceremonies, church etc.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

- All women are required to wear slips especially when wearing transparent (see me through) dresses.

- Apart from the three dependent colours (-eupe -eusi & -ekundu) all other colours are named after natural things. Examples.

Sharti la kijivu.	-	An ash *coloured shirt*	*- a grey shirt*
Skati ya kijani kibichi	-	*A skirt of fresh leaf*	*- a green skirt.*
Koti la kahauria	-	*a coat of coffee*	*- a brown coat.*
Pete ya Dhahabu	-	*a ring of Gold*	*- a Golden ring.*

LESSON 19

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: TRANSPORTATION

COMPETENCY: BOOKING A ROOM

DIALOGUE 1 - MAZUNGUMZO I

Scott:	Hujambo bwana Karani?	***Halo Mister Clerk?***
Clerk:	Sijambo. U hali gani?	***Hallo in which state are you?***
Scott:	Salama tu Ninaweza kupata chumba hapa?.	***Just fine. Can I get a room here?***
Clerk:	Ndio, ungetaka chumba cha aina gani?	***Yes what kind of room would you like?***
Scott:	Chumba cha watu wawili chenye choo na bafu ndani. Pesa ngapi?	***A double room with a toilet and Bathroom inside. How much is it?***
Clerk:	Ni shilingi mia nane kwa usiku mmoja. Utakaa kwa muda gani?	***Eight hundred per night For how long will you stay.***
Scott:	Kwa usiku mmoja tu. Chukua pesa na unipe ufunguo.	***Just one night. Here is the money give me the key.***
Clerk:	Sawa. Utatumia chumba nambari tisa.	***Okay, you'll use room number nine.***
Scott:	Utanipa risiti?	***Will you give me a receipt?***
Clerk:	Ndio kesho asubuhi.	***Yes, tommorrow morning.***
Scott:	Haya asante.	***Okay, Thank you.***

DIALOGUE 2 - MAZUNGUMZO YA PILI

Chris:	Vipi bwana?	***How is it Dude?***
Bosco:	Poa.	***Cool.***
Chris:	Una chumba hapa?.	***Do you have a room?***
Bosco:	La, vyote vimejaa	***No they are all full. (fully booked)***
Chris:	Ni hoteli nyingine gani ninaweza Kwenda?	***Which other good hotel can I go?***
Bosco:	Nenda Parkside, karibu na Jivanjee Garden.	***Go to Parkside near Jivanjee Garden.***

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Chris:	Wana maji moto?	***Do they have hot showers?***
Bosco:	Ndio. Hata na neti za mbu. Utakuwa na usiku poa sana hapo.	***Yes, even Mosquito nets. You will have a very calm night there.***
Chris:	Wanauza vinywaji?	***Do they sell drinks.***
Bosco	Naam, vya kila aina na chakula pia.	***Yes, of all kinds and food too.***
Chris:	Asante rafiki. Tutaonana.	***Thank you. See you.***
Bosco:	Kwaheri	***Bye bye.***

DIALOGUE 3 - MAZUNGUMZO YA TATU

Karani:	Karibu bwana. Habari gani?	***Welcome how are you?***
Mgeni:	Safi.	***Clean (fine)***
Karani:	Ninaweza kukusaidia?	***Can I help you?***
Mgeni:	Ndio, ninahitaji chumba cha mtu mmoja chenye choo na bafu ndani. Inawezekana?	***Yes, I need a self contained room. Is it possible?***
Karani:	Ndio, unakitaka kwa muda gani?	***Yes for how long do you need it?***
Mgeni:	Kwa wiki moja. Ni pesa ngapi?	***For a week. How much is it?***
Karani:	Ni elfu moja kwa usiku mmoja	***One thousand per night.***
Mgeni:	Sawa. Hizi ni pesa za wiki moja.	***Okay. This is money for one week.***
Karani:	Asante. Nitakupa chumba nambari ishirini.	***I'll give you room number Twenty.***
Mgeni:	Ninaweza kupata chakula hapa?	***Can I get food here?***
Karani:	Ndio, kuna kengele ndani ya chumba chako. Finya kisha weita atakuja kukuhudumia. Chakula chako kitaletwa kwenye chumba chako.	***Yes, there's a bell inside your room. Press it and the weita will come to serve you. Your food will be brought into your room.***
Mgeni:	Asante bwana. ***Okay.***	***Thank you sir.***Karani: Sawa sawa.

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

M/WA

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mgeni	Wageni	Guest, visitor(s)
Karani	Makarani	Clerk(s)
Mtalii	Watalii	Tourist(s)
Chumba	Vyumba	Room(s)

N CLASS

Risiti	Risiti	Receipt
Muda	Muda	Period
Kengele	Kengele	Bell(s)
Neti ya Mbu	Neti ya Mbu	Mosquito net
Bafu	Bafu	Bathroom(s)
Ghorofa	Ghorofa	Storey(s)
Lifti	Lifti	Lift, elevator

U CLASS

Ufunguo	Funguo	Key(s)
Usiku	Usiku	Night(s

VERBS

Kupa	-	Give
- pendelea	-	Prefer
- saidia	-	Help
kuwa na	-	have, be with
- uza	-	sell
- pokea	-	receive
- pata	-	get
- kodisha	-	rent

MAELEZO YA SARUFI - GRAMMA EXPLANTION

In this lesson, the main grammar aspect that needs to be explained is -ENYE, as an Adjectival phrase meaning “Having”, Possessing, or ’ “with” - Enye is a prefix dependent stem denoting “Being with” or “Having”, it is frequently used.

Examples;

Mtu mwenye afya	-	**a person having health**	**(healthy person)**
Chumba chenye baridi-		**a room having coldness**	**(a cold room)**
Chjungwa lenye maji	-	**an orange having water**	**(a juicy orange)**

The prefix that you place before this adjectival phrase depends on the noun class, However, when SUFFIX -WE is added to -ENYE the meaning changes to:

i) Self or selves (distinctness)

e.g.a) Nitaenda mwenyewe - **I will go myself**

b) Gari lenyewe - **The vehicle itself.**

ii) Owner e.g.

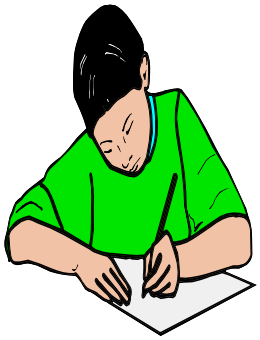
Hosted for free on livelingua.com

a) Mwenyewe hayupo - **The owner is not there.**
b) Wenyewe wamesafiri - **The owners have travelled.**

Note: In M/WA Class, the noun, may be omitted yet both the speaker and the listener will understand each other

ZOEZI 1 - EXERCISE 1

Jibu Maswali haya - Anwer These Questions:



1. Hapa Kenya umekaa katika hoteli gani?
2. Ulikaa Kwa muda gani?
3. Ulikaa peke yako?
4. Ulikuwa unakula katika hoteli hiyo?
5. Ulilipa pesa ngapi kwa siku?
6. Ulikaa katika chumba cha aina gani?
7. Hoteli hiyo ulikuwa na ghorofa? Ngapi?
8. Umewahi kutumia lifti kupanda ghorofa?
9. Katika Kenya vyumba vya kukodisha ni kama vya Amerika?

ZOEZI I - EXERCISE I

Tafsiri Sentensi hizi - Translate these sentences:

1.I want a house, which has a bathroom and a toilet.

2.This room is cold, I don't like it.

3.I don't like salty food.

4.Buffaloes are animals with long horns.

5.I don't like staying in a very dark room.

6.The owner of that house died last year.

7.That healthy old man came yesterday.

ZOEZI III - EXERCISE III

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Tumia maneno haya katika sentensi zako mwenyewe. Use these phrases to create your own sentences.

1. Kitabu chenye _____
2. Kalamu yenye _____
3. Duka lenye _____
4. Kijana mwenye _____
5. Mahali penye _____
6. Ulimwengu wenye _____
7. Mtoto mwenye _____
8. Chungwa lenye _____
9. Ukuta wenye _____

ZOEZI IV - EXERCISE IV

Andika sentensi hizi Kwa wingi - Write these sentences in plural

1. Mwanafunzi mwenyewe ni mtukutu sana.
2. Kikombe chenyewe kilivunjika jana.
3. Nyumba yenyewe imejaa wageni.
4. Tunda lenyewe limeoza.
5. Mkate wenyewe umeungua.
6. Mti wenyewe umekauka.
7. Tanki lenyewe limejaa maji.
8. Msichana mwenyewe ni mrembo sana.

Cultural Note:

- *In some Kenyan hotels, you might be told that there is hot water for showers but in the next morning there won't be any, and you'll be given excuses.*

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

- *Sleeping in lodging by opposite sex, people is associated with prostitution. So when you tell your friends that you slept in a lodging they might mistake you for a loose woman or man. Instead you call it a hotel.*

- *When you go to book a room with someone of your opposite sex, the receptionist might expect you to share a room.*

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TECHNICAL COMPETENCIES

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

AGROFORESTRY COMPETENCY

KUJIJULISHA - INTRODUCTION

MAZUNGUMZO A - DIALOGUE A	
PCV : - Hujambo. **Mkulima:** - Sijambo**.** **PCV** : - Habari ya kazi. **Mkulima** : - Nzuri na wewe. **PCV** : - Nzuri pia. **PCV** : - Jina langu ni Michi, ninatoka nchi ya Amerika, ninafanya kazi na Peace Corps hapa Kenya. **Mkulima**: - Peace Corps ni nini? **PCV** : - Peace Corps ni shirika kutoka Amerika na wanafanya kazi katika nchi tofauti tofauti. **Mkulima**:Na wanafanya kazi gani? **PCV** : - Wanafanya kazi kama kufundisha katika shule, kazi ya maji, msitu, na kuwashauri wafanyi biashara ndogo ndogo.	**PCV:** Hallo **Farmer:** Fine **PCV:** How is work **Farmer**: Fine and you **PCVs:** Fine also **PCV**: My name is Michi, I come from America, I work with Peace Corps here in Kenya. **Farmer:** What is Peace Corps? **PCV:** Peace Corps is an organization from America and has volunteers who work in different countries. **Farmer:** And which work do they do? **PCV:** They do work like teaching in schools, Water and Health, Forestry and Small Business advisory.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAZUNGUMZO B - DIALOGUE B **PCV :** Habari yako. **Mkulima**: Nzuri. **PCV :** Mimi ni mwana Peace Corps ninasaidia kuwapa mawaidha wakulima. **Mkulima:** Unafanya kazi na watu gani? **PCV :** Ninafanya kazi na watu wa misitu.	 **PCV**: How are you **Farmer:** Fine **PCV:** I am a Peace Corps Volunteer helping in giving advice to farmers **Farmer:**, You work with which people? **PCV:** I work with forestry people

Msamiati	**Plural**	**English**
Shirika	Mashirika	Organization
Msitu	Misitu	Forest
Mkulima	Wakulima	Farmer
Kupanda	Kupanda	To grow/plant
Mti	Miti	Tree
Kusaidia	Kusaidia	To help
Mawaidha	Mawaidha	Ideas
Shamba	Mashamba	Farm
Kilimo mseto	Kilimo mseto	Agro-forestry
Kushauri	Kushauri	Advice

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE

Andika kwa Kiswahili - write in Swahili:

1) I am a PCV
2) He/She is an Agroforester.
3) This is a farmer.
4) I am helping farmers.
5) He is planting trees in his farm.
6) I give farmers ideas on Agro-forestry.
7) Which organization do you work for.
8) Peace Corps Volunteers work as Agro-foresters, Water Technicians.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : KILIMO MSETO
COMPETENCY : IMPORTANCE OF TREES IN THE FARM:

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

UMUHIMU WA MITI SHAMBANI	
Mama Mwikali ni mkulima katika sehemu ya katumani. Ana miti tofauti ambayo amepanda pamoja na mimea ya chakula. Mimea hii ya chakula ni kama mahindi, maharagwe, miti ya, matunda, na miti aina tofauti.	Mama Mwikali is a farmer in Katumani. She has different trees that she has planted together with food crops. These food crops are like maize, beans, fruit trees and different types of trees.
Miti humpa kuni, mbao za kujenga nyumba na chakula cha mifugo kwa kutumia majani ya miti. Watu na mifugo hupumzika chini ya kivuli cha miti wakati wa jua kali. Mingine huzuia upepo na mingine ni ua la shamba lake.	Trees give her firewood, timber and fodder from leaves. People and animals rest in the shade from trees when it is hot. Other trees prevent wind while others are live fence.
Wakati wa mvua miti huzuia mmomonyoko wa udongo kwa kushikilia udongo kwa mizizi katika shamba la mama Mwikali. Mizizi ya miti huongeza rutuba udongoni na pia majani yaangukayo, jambo, ambalo huongeza mazao shambani. Mama Mwikali huuza mazao yake sokoni kama mahindi matunda na anapata pesa nyingi.	During rain season, roots hold soil and thus prevent soil erosion in Mama Mwikali's farm. Roots add fertility to the soil and also leaves which fall, a matter which increase food production. Mama Mwikali sells her produce in the market like maize fruits and she gets a lot of money.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

JINSI YA KUPANDA MITI. **HOW TO PLANT TREES.** Miti tofauti inaweza kupandwa pahali tofauti shambani. Unaweza kupanda miti kati ya mimea; mipakani ya shamba, kama ua au kuzuia upepo, pia kama ua la boma, kando ya mto au pahali pa mawe mengi. Miti ambayo hupandwa kati ya mimea ni ile ambayo mizizi yake ni michache na huelekea chini ili isitumie maji na chakula cha mimea. Aina hii ya miti haina kivuli kizito lakini huongeza rotuba udongoni. Miti ambayo hupandwa mpakani ni mirefu na yenye nguvu za kuzuia upepo mkali. Miti ambayo inafaa kupandwa kama ua la boma ni miti ina miiba kwa usalama na ambayo inaweza kukua karibu karibu. Ni muhimu kujua jinsi ya kutunza miti hii. Miti ambayo imepandwa pamoja na mimea hupunguzwa matawi ili kuipa mimea nafasi ya kukua na inapofika kiwango fulani hukatwa kabisa ili ikue upya. Ile miti ambayo iko kwenye mipaka ya shamba hupunguzwa matawi ya chini na kuachwa iwe mirefu ili iweze kuzuia upepo	Different trees can be planted at different places in the farm. You can plant among crops, boundaries,fence or to prevent wind, also as home stead fence banks of rivers or stoney places. Trees that are planted among crops are those wwith tap roots so as not to complete for water and food with crops. These types of trees do not hve big shades but add fertility to the soil. Trees which are planted along bounderies are tall and strong to prevent strong winds. Trees suitable as live or homestad fence are trees having thorns for security and which can groww closely. It is important to know how to care for these trees. Trees that are planted among crops should be trimmed to give chance to the growing crops and at certain level they are completely cut to enable them grow a fresh. The lower branches of trees growwn along the boundries are usually pruned and left to be long so as to prevent wind.

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY:

Kiswahili (Singular)	**Plural**	**English**
Mjitoleaji	Wajitoleaji	Volunteer
Mkulima	Wakulima	Farmers
Kilimo	-	Agriculture
Kilimo Mseto	-	Agroforestry
Kukuza (V)		To grow
Kufuga (V)	-	To rear
Mfugo	Mifugo	Livestock
Kupanda (V)	-	To plant
Mmea	Mimea	Plants
Shamba	Mashamba	Farm
Mnyama	Wanyama	Animals
Umuhimu (abstract)	Umuhimu	Importance
Mzizi	Mizizi	Roots
Sehemu	Sehemu	Area/Part
Kujenga (V)	-	To build

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Rotuba	Rotuba	Fertility
Udongo	Udongo	Soil
Zao	Mazao	Produce (N)
Ua	-	Fence
Kuzuia (V)		To prevent
Mmomonyoko	Mmomonyoko	Erosion
Kushikilia (V)	-	To hold
Kuni	Kuni	Firewood
Mbao	Mbao	Timber
Boma	Maboma	Homestead
Nafasi	Nafasi	Space
Mpaka	Mipaka	Boundry/boarder
Upepo	Upepo	Wind
Mwiba	Miiba	Thorns
Kiwango	Viwango	Level / extent
Tawi	Matawi	Branches

UFAHAMU - COMPREHENSION I

1) Mama Mwikali anaishi wapi?
2) Yeye hupanda nini katika shamba lake?
3) Miti humpa faida gani?
4) Wakati wa mvua miti huzuia nini?
5) Mama Mwikali huuza mazao yake wapi?
6) Miti hupandwa wapi shambani?
7) Ni miti gani hupandwa katikati ya mimea?
8) Ni miti gani hupandwa mipakani?
9) Kwa nini miti hupandwa uani?
10) Miti inayopandwa uani na ile inayopandwa mipakani hutuzwa vipi?
11) Mmomonyoko wa udongo ni nini?
12) Kilimo mseto ni nini?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: **TREE NURSERY - (NASARI YA MICHE)**

COMP: **TEACH FARMERS WHEN, WHY WHERE AND HOW TO CONSTRUCT A TREE NURSERY.**
(KUFUNDISHA WAKULIMA LINI, KWANINI, WAPI NA JINSI YA KUJENGA NASARI YA MITI.

MAZUNGUMZO YA KWANZA - (DIALOGUE ONE)

PCV :Habari zenu?	**PCV:** How are you (plural)
Wakulima:Nzuri sana.	**Farmer**: Very fine
PCV: Tulipokuja hapa Kihoto na Afisa wa misitu, mlitueleza juu ya shida zenu na leo nimekuja ilikujaribu kuwasaidia. Je mnajua nasari ya miche?	**PCV:** When we came here to Kihoto with the Forest Officer, you told us about your problems and today I have come so as to try and help you. Well, do you know a tree nursery?
Mkulima: Ndiyo kwa mfano nasari ya mboga.	Farmer: Yes for example vegetable nursery.
PCV : Asante sana. Sasa ningependa moja wenu atuambie mahitaji ya nasari.	PCV: Thank you very much, now I would like one of you to tell us on the needs of a tree nursery.
Mkulima:Ni bora kutayarisha nasari karibu na maji na kivulini.	**Farmer:** It's better to prepare a tree nursery next to water and shade.
PCV: Asante sana bwana. Pia tunahitaji pahali ambapo:-	**PCV:** Thank you sir, also we need a place where:
a) Hapana maji mengi b) Pahali ambapo wanyama, watu na mvua nyingi haiwezi kuharibu.	a) Doesn't have a lot of water. b) Place where animals, people and a lot of rain can not destroy.
Wakulima: Asante sana bwana sasa tumefahamu.	**Farmer**: Thank you very much sir, now we have understood.
PCV :Ikiwa ninatayarisha nasari ninahitaji nini?	**PCV:** If I am preparing a tree nursery what do I need?
Mkulima: Tunahitaji; udongo, panga, mbolea, jembe na mbegu.	**Farmer:** We need soil, panga, manure, hoe and seeds.
PCV :Pia mnahitaji vijiti, kivuli, migomba, mbao, magogo matofali au mawe.	**PCV:** Also you need, sticks, shade banana stems timber, logs and bricks or stones.
Wakulima: Sasa tumefahamu. Kesho tutaleta vitu vyote, halafu tutatayarisha nasari.	**Farmer:** Now we have understood. Tomorrow we will bring everything, then we will prepare a nursery.
PCV :Haya tutaonana kwaherini.	**PCV**: Okay we will see each other bye.
Wakulima: Kwa heri asante sana.	**Farmer:** Bye thank you very much.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAZUNGUMZO YA PILI (SECOND DIALOGUE)

JINSI YA KUTAYARISHA NASARI (HOW TO PREPARE A NURSERY)

PCV :Hamjambo wakulima.	**PCV:** Hallo farmers
Wakulima: Hatujambo bwana habari yako.	**Farmers:** We are fine sir, how are you?
PCV :Njema, mmeleta vitu vya kutayarisha nasari?	**PCV:** Fine, have you brought things to prepare a nursery?
Wakulima:Ndiyo tumeleta.	**Farmers**: Yes we have brought.
PCV :Asanteni sana. Ikiwa unataka kutayarisha nasari unafanya nini?	**PCV:** Thank you very much. If you want to prepare a nursery, what do you do?
Mkulima:Kwanza, unahitaji kufyeka, na kuchimba mahali ambapo unataka kutayarisha nasari. Halafu tandaza udongo kwa kutoa takataka.	**Farmer:** First, you need to slash and dig a place that you want to prepare a nursery, then flatten the soil by removing rubbish.
PCV: Baadaye utafanya nini?	**PCV:** Later what will you do?
M**kulima II:** Utachukua vijiti vya upana wa inchi saba na viwili vya urefu wa futi moja na nusu na vingine viwili vya urefu wa futi tatu vya kushikilia udongo.	**Farmer II:** You will take sticks of seven inches wide and two sticks of one and a half feet long and another two sticks of three feet long for holding the soil.
PCV :Oh, vizuri kabisa. Na utafanya nini na vijiti?	**PCV:** Oh, very good. And what will you do with the sticks?
Mkulima III: Utatumia vijiti kutengeneza sanduku, pigilia vijiti vidogo kwa kila kona kushikanisha sanduku.	F**armer:** You will use sticks to prepare a box, pitch small sticks in every corner to hold together the box.
PCV : Pia unahitaji kuchanganya karai mbili za udongo ambao unarotuba na karai moja ya mbolea. Halafu weka udongo ambao umechanganya na mbolea ndani ya sanduku na tandaza. Sasa nasari ni tayari kwa kupanda mbegu zako.	**PCV:** Also you need to mix two basins of fertile soil and one basin of manure. Then put the soil that you have mixed in the box and flatten. Now the nursery is ready for planting your seeds.
Mkulima IV: Unatayarisha nasari wakati gani?	**Farmer IV:** When do you prepare a nursery?
PCV : Hilo ni swali muhimu sana!. Hakikisha umetayarisha nasari yako miezi miwili kabla ya mvua kuanza.	**PCV:** That is a very important question. Make sure you have prepared your nursery two months before the rain starts.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

SOMA KWA SAUTI (READ ALOUD)

Miche ya miti.
Changanya udongo na mbolea.
Pigilia kijiti.
Pigilia mgomba.
Pigilia gogo.
Chini ya kivuli.
Ukosefu wa maji.
Ukosefu wa miche.
Ukosefu wa mbegu.
Kutayarisha nasari.
Kutayarisha mbegu.
Kutandaza udongo.
Kutengeneza sanduku.
Chimba mahali.
Kushikanisha sanduku.

VOCABULARIES:

Msamiati		**Misamiati**	**Vocabulary**
Mkaazi	(n)	Wakaazi	Residents
Ukosefu	(n)	Ukosefu	Lack
Mbao	(n)	Mbao	Wood
Mkutano	(n)	Mikutano	Meeting
Miche	(n)	Miche	Seedling
Msitu	(n)	Misitu	Forest
Nasari	(n)	Nasari	Nursery
Kulowa	(v)	Kulowa	To be wet
Kifaa	(n)	vifaa	Tool
Panga	n)	Panga	Panga
Mbegu	(n)	Jembe	Hoe
Mgomba	(n)	Migomba	Banana stem
Jiwe	(n)	Mawe	Stone
Kujadili	(v)	Kujadili	To discuss
Kuni	(n)	Kuni	Firewood
Kujenga	(v)	Kujenga	To build
Kupanda	(v)	Kupanda	To climb
Mti	(n)	Miti	Trees
Kutatua	(v)	Kutatua	To solve
Hitaji	(n)	Hitaji	To need
Mnyama	(n)	Wanyama	Animal
Udongo	(n)	Udongo	Mud
Kutayarisha	(v)	Kutayarisha	To prepare
Kutandaza	(v)	Kutandaza	To flatten

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE:

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MKUTANO WA WATU WA KIJIJI CHA KIHOTO:

Watu wa Kijiji cha Kihoto walikutana ili kuzungumza juu ya shida zao. Shida hizo zilikuwa; ukosefu wa kuni na mbao za kujenga. Mwenyekiti wa mkutano alikuwa mzee wa kijiji, waliona kwamba, bei ya mbao imekuwa ghali, na pia miche ya miti ambayo walipata kutoka kwa serikali haikutosha na pia ilikuwa ya aina moja. Baadaye waliamua kualika afisa wa misitu. Afisa wa misitu alifika pamoja na mwana Peace Corp.

Afisa wa misitu alimjulisha mwana Peace Corp kwa watu wa kijiji cha Kihoto. Mwana Peace Corp alipanga siku ya kukutana na wana kijiji wa Kihoto.

MASWALI - QUESTIONS:

1) Watu wa Kijiji cha Kihoto walikuwa na shida gani?
2) Nani alikuwa kiongozi wa mkutano?
3) Afisa wa misitu aliwasaidia vipi?
4) Mwana Peace Corp alipanga kukutana na wana kijiji wa Kihoto, unafikiri kwa nini?

JIBU MASWALI HAYA (ANSWER THESE QUESTIONS)

1) Unahitaji kutayarisha nasari ya miche wapi?
2) Unahitaji nini ili kutayarisha nasari ya miche?
3) Ikiwa unataka kutayarisha nasari, kwanza utafanya nini?
4) Baada ya kutandaza udongo utafanya nini?
5) Utatumia vijiti vipi?
6) Unachanganya vipi mbolea na udongo na kisha utafanya nini?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

KUTAYARISHA MBEGU - SEED TREATMENT:

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE

Tom: Hujambo.	**Tom:** Hallo
Mkulima:Sijambo, habari gani?	**Farmer:** Fine, how are you?
Tom :Njema labda yako.	Tom: Fine maybe you?
Mkulima: Njema tunaendelea na kazi tu.	**Farmer:** Fine we are continuing only with work.
Mkulima: Nilipanda mbegu zangu lakini naona hazikuota zote. Unafikiri kwa nini?	**Farmer:** I planted my seeds but all didn't germinate. Why do you think so?
Tom : Labda hukutayarisha mbegu zako vizuri.	**Tom:** Maybe you didn't prepare your seeds well.
Mkulima: Ninahitaji kutayarisha kabla ya kupanda?	**Farmer:** Do I need to prepare before planting?
Tom : Ndiyo ni muhimu sana kutayarisha mbegu zako kabla ya kupanda.	**Tom:** Yes it is very important to prepare your seeds before planting.
Mkulima: Ni muhimu kwa nini?	**Farmer:** Why is it important?
Tom : Kwa sababu kuna mbegu tofafuti. Megu zingine zina maganda magumu na haziwezi kumeza maji kwa upesi.	**Tom:** Because there are different seeds, other seeds have hard husks and cannot absorb water easily.
Mkulima: Ehe.	**Farmer:** Ehe.
Tom : Mbegu kama Tamarindus indica (mkwaju),huwekwa ndani ya maji moto na kulala usiku mzima.	Tom: Seeds like Tamarindus Indica are put in hot water and stay over night.
Mkulima: Na hizi zinaitwa Acacia Mearnsii (Black Wattle) ambazo nilinunua wiki iliyopita?	**Farmer:** What of these called Acacia Mearnsii (black wattle) that I bought last week?
Tom : Hizo hufunikwa kwa udongo mwepesei na majani katika nasari halafu majani huchomwa moto.	**Tom:** Those are covered with light soil and grass in the nursery and burnt.
Mkulima: Oh nimefamu, kuna njia nyingine za kutayarisha mbegu?.	**Farmer:** Oh I have understood, are there other ways of preparing seeds?
Tom : Ndiyo, mbegu zingine hukatwa kidogo ili kuruhusu maji kuingia ndani na pia zingine hupandwa moja kwa moja kama Eucalyptus Saligna.	**Tom:** Yes, other seeds are cut a bit so as to allow water to enter inside and also others are planted directly like Eucalyptus Saligna.
Mkulima: Asante sana kwa mashauri.	**Farmer:** Thank you very much for the advise.
Tom : Karibu.	**Tom:** Welcome.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY:

Kiswahili	Plural	English
Kupanda	Kupanda	To plant
Nasari	Nasari	Nursery
Kuota	Kuota	To germinate
Kutayarisha	Kutayarisha	To prepare
Mbegu	Mbegu	Seeds
Kuhitaji	Kuhitaji	To need
Muhimu	Muhimu	Important
Ganda	Maganda	Husk
Gumu	Gumu	Hard
Usiku mzima	Usiku mzima	Whole night
Kijiti	Vijiti	Sticks
Kutengeneza	Kutengeneza	To make
Mtaro	Mitaro	Trench
Urefu	Urefu	Length
Upana	Upana	Width
Upande	Pande	Side
Kuachana	Kuachana	To leave apart
Inchi	Inchi	Inch
Kukua	Kukua	To grow
Kujitokeza	Kujitokeza	To appear
Kuchanganya	Kuchanganya	To mix
Kumwaga	Kumwaga	To pour
Kufunika	Kufunika	To cover
Udongo	Udongo	Soil
Uhifadhi	Kuhifadhi	To conserve
Mbolea	Mbolea	Manure
Njia inayofaa	Njia zinazofaa	Better way
Kuchemsha	Kuchemsha	To boil

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

KUPANDA MBEGU KATIKA NASARI - SOWING SEEDS IN THE NURSERY:

Yohana ni mkulima ambaye amejua umuhimu wa kupanda miti katika shamba lake. Baada ya kutayarisha mbegu za miti kwa njia inayofaa, yeye huzipanda katika nasari.	Yohana is a farmer who has known the importance of planting trees in his farm. After preparing seeds in a suitable way, he plants in the nursery.
Anapopanda mbegu zake yeye huchukua kijiti na kutengeneza mitaro midogo kutoka upande wa juu mpaka wa chini kwa urefu. Mitaro hii huachana na inchi nne. Kwa kawaida mitaro hii haiendi ndani sana wala kuwa juu sana. Hii ni kwa sababu mbegu sitakuwa ndani sana hazitaweza kuota na zikiwa juu sana zitachomeka na jua na hazitaweza kukua.	When he plants his seeds he takes a stick and prepare small furrows from upper side to lower side in length. These furrows are four inches apart. Normally these furrows are not so deep nor shallow. This is because if seeds are so deep they will not germinate and if so shallow they be burnt by sun and not be able to grow.
Baada ya kutengeneza mitaro, Yohana huchukua mbegu zake na kupanda moja moja akitumia upana wa inchi mbili kutoka kwa moja hadi nyingine. Upana huu ni muhimu kwa mbegu kukua kwa njia inayofaa. Ikiwa mbegu ni ndogo sana yeye huzichanganya na udongo na kuzimwaga katika mitaro. Baadaye Yohana huzifunika mbegu kwa udongo mwepesi na (hufanya mugumu kwa mikono).	After preparing furrows, Yohana takes his seeds and plants one by one using a width of two inches from one furrow to the other. This width is important for seeds to grow in a suitable way. If the seeds are very small he mixes with soil and spills them in furrows. Later Yohana covers them with light soil and harden by using hands.
Tayari Yohana amemaliza kazi yake ya kupanda, kilichobaki ni kufunika nasari. Katika kufunika yeye hutumia nyasi au majani ambayo huwa kama mbolea na pia kuhifadhi maji udongoni.	Already Yohana has finished his work of planting what is left is to cover the nursery. In covering he uses grasses or leaves that / which are like manure and also conserves water in the soil.

ZOEZI LA UFAHAMU - COMPREHENSION EXERCISE:

Jibu maswali haya - Answer these questions:

1) Yohana hufanya kazi gani?
2) Kabla ya kupanda miti katika nasari, Yohana hufanya nini?
3) Yohana hutumia nini kupanda mbegu katika nasari?
4) Kwa nini mitaro midogo haiendi ndani sana wala kuwa juu sana?
5) Baada ya Yohana kutayarisha mitaro yeye hufanya nini?
6) Kama mbegu ni ndogo sana Yohana hufanya nini?
7) Kwa nini Yohana hufunika nasari?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE TWO:
Andika Insha juu ya umuhimu wa miti kwa mkulima:

ZOEZI LA TATU - EXERCISE THREE:

Tunga sentensi ukitumia maneno yafuatayo:-
Write these sentences using the following words:
Kutayarisha
Kuota
Kuhifadhi
Kumeza maji

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : MBOLEA (COMPOST MANURE)

COMPETENCY: JINSI YA KUTENGENEZA MBOLEA. (HOW TO MAKE COMPOST MANURE)

MAZUNGUMZO YA KWANZA (DIALOGUE 1).

PCV :Hujambo? **Mkulima**: - Sijambo. **PCV**: Kazi yangu ni kufundisha wakulima jinsi ya kujitengenezea mbolea nyumbani. **Mkulima**: Ni sawa. **PCV** :Je unajua jinsi ya kutengeneza mbolea?	**PCV:** Hallo **Farmer:** Fine **PCV:** My work is to teach farmers how to make compost manure for themselves at home. **Farmer:** It is okay **PCV:** Well, do you know how to make compost manure?
Mkulima:Hapana ningependa sana kujua.	**Farmer:** No! I would very much want to know?
PCV :Kwa kutengeneza mbolea unahitaji kuchimba shimo kubwa au mashimo matatu yaliyokaribu. **Mkulima**: Baada ya kuchimba shimo unafanya nini? **PCV** : Unakusanya majani makavu, nyasi, kinyezi cha mifugo na mabaki ya jikoni.	**PCV:** I'm making compost manure, you need to dig a big pit or three close pits. **Farmer:** After digging the pit what do you do? **PCV:** You collect dry branches, grass, animal dung and garbage.
Mkulima: Eh endelea.	**Farmer:** Eh! continue
PCV :Tandaza nyasi kavu chini ya shimo ongeza nyasi mbichi, majani au mabaki ya jikoni juu. Halafu ongeza mchanga kidogo au kinyezi cha mifugo. Endelea hivyo hivyo hadi shimo lijae.	P**CV:** Spread dry grass in the pit, add fresh grass leaves or cabbage from the kitchen on top. Then add little soil or dung from animals. Continue that way until the pit is filled up.
Mkulima: Mashimo haya mengine mawili ni ya nini?	**Farmer**: What are the other two pits for?
PCV : Baada ya wiki moja ondoa mbolea hii kutoka shimo hili hadi shimo la pili na jaza shimo hilo la kwanza tena. Baada ya wiki mbili fanya hivyo hivyo katika shimo la tatu. **Mkulima**: Mbolea hii itachukuwa muda gani kuwa tayari?	**PCV :** After one week, transfer this compost manure to the second pit and fill the first one again. After two weeks do so to the third pit. **Farmer:** How long will it take this manure to be ready?
PCV : Mbolea itakuwa tayari baada ya miezi miwili. Lakini kumbuka usiweke nyama, mipira, mifupa, mikebe, karatasi au mavi ya binadamu katika shimo la mbolea. **Mkulima**: Asante sana.	**PCV:** Manure will be ready after two months. But remember, not to put carcus, rubber, bones, tins, paper or human faeces in the compost pit.
PCV : Karibu na kwaheri.	**Farmer:** Thank you very much. **PCV:** Welcome and bye bye.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

VOCABULARIES:

Msamiati	**Misamiati**	**Vocabulary**
Mbolea	Mbolea	Compost
Shimo	Mashimo	Pit
Nyasi	Nyasi	Grass
Kinyesi	Vinyezi	Waste
Mnyama	Wanyama	Animals
Kutengeneza		To make
Kuchimba		To Dig
Jani	Majani	Leaves
Jikoni	Jikoni	Kitchen
Baki	Mabaki	Leftover
Kutandaza		To level
Chini		Down
Kuongeza		To add
Mbichi		Fresh
Kavu		Dry
Mchanga		Soil
Mfugo	Mifugo	Livestock
Kujaza		To fill
Wiki		Week
Mwezi	Miezi	Month
Kuchukua		To take
Kuwa tayari		To last / be ready
Kukumbuka		To remember
Mpira	Mipira	Plastic
Mkebe	Mikebe	Tin
Mfupa	Mifupa	Bone
Karatasi	Makaratasi	Paper
Nyama		Meat
Mwanadamu	Wanadamu	Human being

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

UMUHIMU WA MBOLEA:

Mimea ni kama binadamu. Inahitaji vyakula ili kuwa na nguvu na yenye afya. Mbolea husaidia kwa kazi hii. Ukiwa unaanza kulima shamba lako, chimba shimo la kuozesha mbolea pia. Mbolea husaidia udongo kuwa na rotuba hushikilia maji mchangani na husaidia kuzuia mmomonyoko wa udongo. Mbolea hutumika vyema zaidi ikiwa imechanganywa na mchanga. Kwa kufanya hivi shamba huwa na rotuba wakati wote.	Crops are like human beings. They need food so as to be strong and healthy. Manure helps in this way. If you are starting to cultivate your firm dig a pit for rotting compost manure also. Manure helps soil to be fertile holds are and helps in preventing soil erosion. Manure is well used if mixed with soil. In doing this the firm is always fertile

MASWALI (QUESTIONS).

1. Kwa nini mimea ni kama binadamu?
2. Mbolea husaidia udongo kwa njia gani?
3. Taja umuhimu wa mbolea.
4. Kwa nini ni muhimu kuchimba shimo?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : UHIFADHI WA NGUVU ZA KUNI

COMPETENCY: FUNZA JINSI YA KUJITENGENEZEA JIKO LA MAENDELEO NA MATUMIZI.

MAZUNGUMZO YA KWANZA (DIALOGUE ONE)

PCV : Habari yako?	**PCV**: How are you?
Mama: Nzuri sana.	**Mama:** Very fine.
PCV : Mimi ni Mjitoleaji wa Pisko, na nilipozungumuza na Afisa wa Kilimo Mseto wenu alinieleza juu ya shida za kuni hapa Nyamathi.	**PCV**: I am a Peace Corps Volunteer and when I talked to your Agroforester he told me about firewood problems here in Nyamathi.
Mama : Ndiyo ni kweli.	**Mama:** Yes its true
PCV : Kuna njia yoyote ya kutatua shida hii?	**PCV:** Are there waysof solving this problem?
Mama: Sijui Bwana!	**Mama:** I don't know sir.
PCV : Asante, kuna njia za kutatua shida hii kwa kujenga jiko la maendeleo ambalo hutumia kuni chache.	**PCV:** Thank you. There are ways of solving this problem by constructing modern stove which uses less firewood.
Mama: Ningependa sana kujua kujenga maendeleo jiko..	**Mama:** I would like to know how to construct a modern stove.
PCV : Basi kwa kujenga jiko la maendeleo kwanza tunahitaji vifaa hivi. Nunua mjengo wa jiko kutoka kwa muuzaji..Udongo wa mchwa na mawe madogo Maji.Pia tunahitaji vifaa vingine kwa kujenga kama sufuria debe, karai, panga na kijiko cha mchanga.	**PCV:** Okay, in constructing a modern stove we need these materials. Buy a stove liner from a seller. Soil from an anti hill and small stones and water. We also need other materials like sufuria, tin, basin panga and shovel.
Mama: Unajenga vipi?	**Mama**: How do you construct?
PCV : Hatua ya kwanza tunahitaji: - Kuchagua pahali tambarare jikoni - Tandaza pahali hapo na unyunyuzie maji. - Lowesha mjengo wa jiko hili ndani ya sufuria kabisa. -Changanya udongo na jivu sawa sawa kwa kutumia kijiko cha mchanga na pia nyunyizia maji. Pima nafasi kutoka ukutani na chora mviringo kuzunguka mjengo. Ukitumia kijiti au kidole. Unafahamu?	**PCV**: First step we need: - To choose a flat area in the kitchen - flatten that place and water it. - soak this stove liner inside a sufuria completely - mix soil and ash thoroughly with a shovel and water. - measure a space from the wall and draw a circle around the liner using a stick or a finger. Do you understand?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mama: Ndiyo endelea.	**Mama:** Yes continue
PCV : Sasa utaweka mawe ndani ya sufuria na kunyunyuzia, halafu weka mawe hayo ndani ya mviringo ambao umechora.	**PCV**: Now you will put stones inside a sufuria and water it then put those stones inside the circle which you have drawn.
Mama: Kisha utafanya nini?	**Mama:** Then what will you do?
PCV : Weka udongo ulio maji katika mapengo kwa kufinyilia, kisha funika mawe kwa udongo mwingi na upige kwa panga. Weka sehemu ya nje ya jiko vibonge vya udongo kuzunguka. Vile vile weka mawe laini, jaza mviringo wa nje wacha mlango wazi.	**PCV:** Put wet soil in spaces by squizing then cover the stones with a lot of soil and press by hitting using on panga. Put soil balls around the outer part of the liner like likewise put smooth stones, fill the outer circle and leave the door open.
Mama: Sasa jiko la maendeleo ni tayari?	**Mama:** Is the modern stove ready now?
PCV : Ndiyo, lakini usisahau kufanya miraba mitatu ya udongo na mawe kwa kila hatua. Pia kumbuka kutumia vibonge vya udongo upande wa nje ya jiko lako. Na fanya laini upande wa juu wa jiko na mbavuni kwa kutumia panga.	**PCV:** Yes, but don't forget to make three squares of clay and stones in every step. Also remember to use clay balls outside your stove and smoothen the top and the sides using a panga.
Mama: Ninaweza kutumia jiko hili sasa?	**Mama:** Can I use this stove now?
PCV : Hapana. Jiko ni tayari kutumia baada ya siku tatu na mwisho kabisa wakati jiko lako limekauka. Unaweza kulipaka mchanganyiko wa majivu na samadi au majivu na sementi.	**PCV:** No , it is ready for use after three days and when completely dry. You can apply a mixture of ash and cowdung or ash and cement.
Mama: Asante sana bwana, nimefahamu kujenga lakini nitatumiaje?	**Mama:** Thank you very much sir I have understood the construction but how will I use it?
PCV : Swali nzuri . Fuata hatua hizi: -Tumia kuni mbili au tatu -Punguza kuni baada ya chakula kuchemka. - Funika chungu au sufuria. -Lowesha vyakula vigumu kama maharagwe -Kata kata vyakula vya mizizi -Tumia kuni kavu.	**PCV**: Good question follow these steps. - use two or three firewood - reduce firewood when the food is boiled - cover the pot/sufuria - soak hard food e.g. beans - chop tuber foods - use dry firewood
Mama: Asante sana kwa kunifundisha na kwaheri..	**Mama:;** Thank you for teaching me and bye.
PCV: Kwaheri tutaonana.	
Mama: Kwaheri.	

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

VOCABULARIES:

Msamiati		**Misamiati**	**Vocabulary:**
Jiko	(N)	Meko	Stove
Maji	(N)	Maji	Water
Mchanga	(N)	Mchanga	Sand/ soil
Udongo	(N)	Udongo	Soil
Mchwa	(N)	Mchwa	Ant
Kuni	(N)	Kuni	Wood
Jiwe	(N)	Mawe	Stone
Nguvu	(N)	Nguvu	Energy
Shida	(N)	Shida	Problem
Kutandaza	(V)	Kutandaza	To flatten
Kupima	(V)	Kupima	To measure
Kulowa	(V)	Kulowa	To wet
Kifaa	(V)	Vifaa	Tool
Panga	(V)	Panga	Panga
Jembe	(N)	Majembe	Hoe
Kujenga	(V)	Kujenga	To build
Kilimo Mseto	(N)	Kilimo Mseto	Agroforestry
Kuchanganya	(V)	Kuchanganya	To mix
Laini	(Adj)	Laini	Soft
Moshi	(N)	Moshi	Smoke
Maendeleo	(N)	Maendeleo	Development
Kunyunyuzia	(V)	Kunyunyuzia	To Sprinkle
Kijiko	(N)	Vijiko	Shovel
Sufuria	(N)	Sufuria	Sufuria
Hatua	(N)	Hatua	Step
Nyembamba	(Adj)	Nyembamba	Slim
Kibonge	(N)	Vibonge	Soil Ball
Pengo	(N)	Mapengo	Gap
Kufinyilia	(V)	Kufinyilia	To squeeze
Mviringo	(N)	Mviringo	Circle
Mbavu	(N)	Mabavu	Sideway
Mjengo wa Jiko	(N)	Mijengo ya meko	Liner
Kuhitaji	(V)	Kuhitaji	To need
Kijiji	(N)	Vijiji	Village
Muuzaji	(N)	Wauzaji	Seller
Kuchora	(V)	Kuchora	To draw
Ukuta	(N)	Kuta	Wall
Kidole	(N)	Vidole	Finger
Kufunika	(V)	Kufunika	To cover
Kupaka	(V)	Kupaka	To smoothen
Mchanganyiko	(N)	Michanganyiko	Mixture
Kinyeshi	(N)	Vinyeshi	Cowdung

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

UFAHAMU (COMPREHENSION) - READ THIS PASSAGE AND ANSWWER THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:

Mabibi wa kijiji cha Nyamathi walikutana kuzungumza juu ya shida zao. Shida hizo zilikuwa ukosefu wa kuni. Mwenye kiti wa kikundi hicho Bi. Muli aliamua kualika Afisa wa Kilimo Mseto wa Kijiji hicho Bw. Ikwabe ili kuwapatia mafunzo juu ya shida hii.

Walipokutana baada ya siku tatu. Bwana Ikwabe alifunza juu ya ujensi wa jiko la Maendeleo pia aliwaelezea faida za jiko hilo.

Mabibi waliuliza vifaa ambavyo vinatumika kwa kujenga jiko hili na Afisa wa Kilimo Mseto alisema kwamba kujenga Jiko la maendeleo wanahitaji vifaa kama mjengo wa jiko, udongo wa mchwa, mawe madogo, maji; pia aliendelea kusema kuwa kuna vifaa vingine hutumika kwa kujengea kama , jembe, panga, mwiko, sufuria na debe.

Mabibi hawa walifurahi sana kupata mafunzo haya na walianza kujenga jiko la maendeleo baada ya kupata vifaa hivyo.

Katika kijiji hicho mabibi wote walijenga meko ya maendeleo na shida yao ya kuni iliisha na walimshukuru sana Afisa wao kwa kazi nzuri. Bi. Muli alisema kwamba Bw. Ikwabe angetembelea Kijiji hicho mara kwa mara ili kujadili shida yoyote. Kikundi hiki kilifurahi sana!

MASWALI (QUESTIONS).

1. Mabibi wa Kijiji cha Nyamathi walikuwa na shida gani?
2. Bibi mwenye kiti aliitwa nani?
3. Afisa wa Kilimo Mseto wa Kijiji hicho aliitwa nani?
4. Afisa huyu aliwafunza mabibi juu ya kujenga nini?
5. Taja majina manne ya vifaa ambavyo vinatumika kwa kujenga jiko la maendeleo.
6. Kikundi hiki kilikutana baada ya siku ngapi?

(B)

Wewe ni Afisa wa Kilimo Mseto katika sehemu yako ya kazi. Kuna shida ya kuni.

Jaribu kuwafunza watu wa kijiji hicho jinsi ya kujisaidia katika shida hii.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

REVISED SMALL ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT
LANGUAGE TECHNICAL COMPETENCIES

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

KUJIJULISHA 1

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE:

PCV : Habari zenu.	**PCV:** How are you
Kikundi: Nzuri.	**Group:** We are fine
PCV :Jina langu ni Scott ninatoka nchi ya Amerika.	**PCV:** My name is Scott, I come from America
Kikundi: Unafanya nini hapa Kenya.?	**Group:** What do you do here?
PCV :Mimi ni mshauri wa biashara ndogo kutoka shirika la Peace Corps.	**PCV:** I am a Small Enterprise Developer from Peace Corps Organization.
Kikundi: Peace Corp ni nini?	**Group**: What is Peace Corps?
PCV: Peace Corp ni shirika ambalo linafanya kazi pamoja na Serikali za mataifa mbali mbali kama Kenya, Uganda n.k.	**PCV**: Peace Corps is an organization which works together with the government from different nations like Kenya, Uganda etc.
Kikundi:Mnafanya kazi gani?	**Group**: What work do you do?
PCV: Tunafanya kazi kama kufundisha katika shule, kazi ya maji na usafi, msitu na ushauri wa biashara ndogo ndogo	**PCV:** We do work like teaching schools, Water and Sanitation, Forestry and advising small business people.

Msamiati	**Misamiati**	**Vocabulary**
Biashara	Biashara	Business
Mteja	Wateja	CustomerClient
Mwana Peace Corps	Wana Peace Corps	A PCV
Shirika	Mashirika	Organization
Serikali	Serikali	Government
Taifa	Mataifa	Nation
Kushauri (v)		To advice
Mshauri	Washauri	Advisor
Kutangaza (v)		To advertise
Zaidi	Zaidi	More
Kujaribu (v)		To try
Mbali mbali	Mbali mbali	Different
Msitu	Misitu	Forest
Maana	Maana	Meaning
Mpango	Mipango	Plans

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI - EXERCISE

Andika kwa kiswahili - Write in Swahili:

1. I am a PCV.
2. He is a Small Business Advisor.
3. This is a businessman.
4. This is a women's group.
5. How is bussiness.
6. Are there many customers?
7. You need to advertise more?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: **GATHERING INFORMATION ABOUT THE GROUP**
KUPATA HABARI JUU YA KIKUNDI

COMPETENCY:
ASK CULTURALLY APPROPRIATE QUESTIONS TO THE OFFICERS (CHAIRPERSON, TREASURER, SECRETARY) - (ULIZA MSWALI AMBAYO YANAFAA KIUTAMADUNI KWA MAAFISA (MWENYEKITI, MWEKA HAZINA, KARANI)

MJITOLEAJI NA KIKUNDI CHA BONDO VOLUNTEER AND BONDO GROUP

MAZUNGUMZO: DIALOGUE	
Mjitoleaji:- Hujambo.	**PCV:** HoW are you?
Mwenyekiti: - Sijambo.	**Chairperson**: Fine
Mjitoleaji:- Habari za kazi.	**PCV:** How is work?
Mwenyekiti:- Nzuri tu. Tunaendelea tu.	**Chairperson:** Good, we are still going on well.
Mjitoleaji:- Nimekuja kuwatembelea leo.	**PCV:** I have come to visit you today
Mwenyekiti:- Asante sana umefanya vizuri kututembelea.	**Chairperson:** Thank you very much for visiting us.
	PCV: How is the group going on?
Mjitoleaji:- Kikundi kinaendeleaje?	**Chairperson:** Well , but members are late during meetings
Mwenyekiti:- Kinaendelea vizuri lakini wanachama huchelewa wakati wa mikutano.	**PCV:** Have you tried to talk to them about this issue?
Mjitoleaji:- Umejaribu kuzungumza na wao juu ya jambo hili?.	**Chairperson:** Yes, but still they are late there are other problems for example members dont register and they don't pay membership FEE.
Mwenyekiti:- Ndiyo lakini bado wanachelewa. Pia kuna shida zingine kwa mfano wanachama hawajiandikishi kwa wingi na hawalipi pesa za uanachama.	**PCV** : How much do you pay to be a member?
Mjitoleaji: - Mnalipa pesa ngapi kuwa memba? au Mwanachama?.	

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mwenyekiti:- Shilingi ishirini. **Mjitoleaji:**- Labda shilingi ishirini ni nyingi, mnaweza kupunguza kuwa shilingi kumi? **Mwenyekiti:**- Haya tutajaribu kufanya hivyo. **Mjitoleaji**:- Kwa sasa mna wanachama wangapi ambao wamejiandikisha? **Mwenyekiti:** Kuna wanachama kumi ambao wamejiandikisha na kulipa pesa zote. **Mjitoleaji:**- Panga siku ya mkutano halafu nitakuja kuzungumza na wao. **Mwenyekiti:**Haya, tutakualika. **Mjitoleaji:** - Asante tutaonana siku hiyo ya mkutano. **Mwenyekiti:** - Kwaheri. **Mjitoleaji**: Kwaheri.	**Chairperson:** Twenty shillings **PCV**: Maybe twenty shillings is alot can reduce to ten shillings? **Chairperson:** Okay we will try to do that. **PCV:** For now how many members have registered? **Chairperson**: There are ten who have registered and paid all their money. **PCV:** Schedule a meeting day then I will come to talk with them. **Chairperson**: Okay we will welcome you. **PCV:** Thank you I see you during the meeting day**.** **Chairperson:** Bye- **PCV:** Bye

MSAMIATI: VOCABULARY

Msamiati	**Plural**	**Vocabulary**
Mwenyekiti	Wenyekiti	Chairperson
Mwanachama	Wanachama	Members
Karani	Karani	Secretary
Mweka hazina	Waweka hazina	Treasurer
Mjitoleaji	Wajitoleaji	Volunteers
Kikundi	Vikundi	Group
Mwanamke	Wanawake	Women
Kupanga (v)	-	To plan
Kuendelea (v)	-	To progress
Kujiunga (v)	-	To join
Kujiandikisha (v)	-	To enrol
Kuhitaji (v)	-	To need

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE:

Tafsiri sentensi hizi: Translate these sentences:

1. Jina la kikundi
2. Kuna wanachama wangapi?
3. Vikundi vya wanawake?
4. Wanachama hukutana mara ngapi?
5. Kikundi kilianza lini?
6. Je kikundi kinaweka pesa zao benki.
7. Je kwa sasa kuna pesa ngapi kwa benki?
8. Mara kwa mara.
9. Mara moja kwa wiki.

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE TWO

Andika kwa wingi: Write in Plurals

1. Kikundi cha wanawake.
2. Mimi ni mwanachama.
3. Kikundi kilianza lini?
4. Analipa pesa ngapi kuwa mwanachama?
5. Huyu ni mwenyekiti.
6. Hiki ni kitabu cha mweka hazina.
7. Huyu ni mwanachama.

ZOEZI LA TATU: - EXERCISE THREE

1) Kikundi cha Bondeni kina shida gani?
2) Wanachama hujiandikisha kwa pesa ngapi?
3) Ni wanachama wangapi wamejiandikisha na kulipa pesa zote.
4) Wanaweza kufanya nini ili watu wengi wajiandikishe?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: INFORMATION GATHERING ABOUT A GROUP
COMP : DEEPER INFORMATION GATHERING:

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE:

PCV Shanti na Mama Wangare (Kiongozi wa kikundi).

Shanti - :Asante sana Mama Wangare kwa kukubali kukutana na mimi leo.	**Shanti:** Thank you very much Wangare for agreeing to meet with me today.
Wangare:Karibu na asante kwa kufika.	**Wangare:** Welcome and thank you for coming.
Shanti - :Habari za kikundi chenu?	**Shanti**: How is your group?
Wangare:Nzuri, tunaendelea pole pole.	**Wangare:** Good, we are continuing slowly.
Shanti- :Tutafanya kazi pamoja kwa miaka miwili ijayo na nina maswali machache kuhusu kikundi chenu.	**Shanti:** We will work together for the next two years and I have a few questions about your group.
Wangare:Haya tutajaribu kujibu maswali yako.	**Wangare:** Okay, we will try to answer your questions
Shanti - :Kwanza ningependa kujua mlianza lini?	**Shanti:** First, I would like to know when you started.
Wangare:Tulianza kama miaka minne hivi iliyopita.	**Wangare**: We started four years ago.
Shanti - :Na wakati huo mlikuwa wangapi?	**Shanti:** How many were you at that time?
Wangare: - Tulikuwa akina mama kama ishirini na watano na tumeongezeka na sasa tuko na wanachama hamsini.	**Wangare:** We were 25 members and the number has increased now, we are 50 members.
Shanti :Kwa nini mlifikiri kuanzisha kikundi hiki chenu?	**Shanti**: Why did you think about starting this group?.
Wangare: Tulihitaji pesa za kusaidia jamaa zetu kwa kulipa karo za shule na kununua nguo kwa sababu tuliona pesa za akina baba hazikuwa zinatosha.	**Wangare:** We needed money to help our families in paying school fees and buying clothes because we saw that the money made by the men was not enough.
Shanti- : Na mpaka sasa mnaendeleaje?	**Shanti:** And upto now, how are you doing in your business as a group?
Wangare :Kwanza tulichanga pesa za wanachama na tukazungumza tutafanya nini katika kikundi. Tukaamua kukutana mara mbili kwa wiki na kushona ciondo. Tuliuza ciondo mia mbili katika masoko ya nje.	**Wangare:** Each member contributed a membership fee of 20/= then we discussed how to involve the group. We decided to meet twice in a week to weave baskets. We exported and sold 200 baskets.
Shanti- :Vizuri sana! Na mlifanya nini na mapato yenu?	**Shanti:** Very good, what did you do with your profit.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Wangare:Tulinunua mashine ya kusagia mahindi na pesa zilizobaki tuligawia wanachama. **Shanti-** :Na wanachama wamefaidika vipi na shughuli za kikundi? **Wangare - :**Wamefaidika kwa njia nyingi. Wengine wamepata mikopo ambayo wamelipa bila riba na wengine wamejenga nyumba. **Shanti**:Ah! kikundi chenu kinafanya vizuri sana! **Wangare**:Lakini, tuna shida fulani. **Shanti**:Shida gani? **Wangare**: Wanachama wengine hawalipi mikopo yao kwa wakati unaofaa. Pia wengine hawaji mikutanoni au wanachelewa sana, lakini shida yetu kubwa ni kuweka hesabu kwa vitabu. **Shanti** :Asante sana Mama Wangare kwa maelezo yako. Nitaona nitafanya nini kuwasaidia.	**Wangare:** We bought a Posho Mill and shared the rest of the money amongst members. **Shanti:** How have the members gained from the activities of the group. **Wangare:** They have gained in many ways. Some have paid school fees, some have loans which they have paid without interest and some have built houses. **Shanti:** Good your group is doing very well. **Wangare:** But we have a certain problem **Shanti:** What problem? **Wangare:** Some members do not pay their loans on time. Also others do not attend meetings or they come late, the other major problem is bookkeeping. **Shanti**: Thank you very much Mama Wangare for your briefing. I see what I can do to help you.

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY:

Kiswahili	**Plural**	**English**
Maelezo	Maelezo	Explanation
Hesabu	Hesabu	Accounts
Lengo	Lengo	Goal
Kikundi	Vikundi	Group(s)
Mkutano	Mikutano	Meetings
Mapato	Mapato	Earnings
Kutegemea (v)	-	To depend on
Kusaga (v)	-	To grind
Kugawa (v)	-	To divide
Kugawana (v)	-	To divide amongst /share
Mradi	Miradi	Projects
Kuchanga (v)	-	To contribute
Mwajiri	Wajiri	Employers
Mkopo	Mikopo	Loan
Faida	Faida	Profit
Hasara	Hasara	Loss
Kiondo	Ciondo	An African basket

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Riba	Riba	Interest
Mashine	Mashine	Machine
Shughuli	Shughuli	Activity

MAZOEZI YA UFAHAMU: - COMPREHENSION EXERCISE.

1. Akina mama walianza na shughuli gani?
2. Kwa nini walikutana mara mbili kwa wiki?
3. Taja njia mbili ambazo wanachama walipata faida?
4. Ni matatizo gani ambayo kikundi kinapata?
5. Unafikiri Shanti atawasaidia kwa njia gani?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: **INFORMATION GATHERING ABOUT A GROUP**

COMP: **DEEPER INFORMATION GATHERING**

PCV NA KIONGOZI WA KIKUNDI

Siku moja mjitoleaji wa Peace Corps alipanga kukutana na kiongozi wa kikundi cha Asego kwa mara ya pili. Baada ya kukutana naye, mjitoleaji alianza kwa kumsalamia na kumwuliza ikiwa anaweza kumpa historia juu ya biashara yao. Kiongozi alianza kwa kusema, "kikundi chetu kilianza miaka miwili iliyopita na tulianza na wanachama hamsini na tukaamua kuchanga shillingi ishirini kila memba, lakini wengine hawajajiandikisha mpaka sasa. Kwa hivyo kwa wale ambao wamejiandikisha na kulipa pesa zote ni watu ishirini na watano. Wanachama waliamua kukutana mara mbili kwa wiki na kushona viondo. Tuliuza viondo mia tatu katika masoko ya nje. Tangu tuanze kikundi hiki, tumefanya maendeleo mbali mbali kama kununua mashine ya kusagia mahindi na pesa zingine tumegawia wanachama. Wanachama pia wamefaidika kwa njia nyingi kama kulipa karo za shule wengine wamepata mikopo ambayo wamelipa bila riba, na wengine wamejenga nyumba. Ingawa wanachama wamefaidika kwa njia nyingi, wengine baada ya Kupata mikopo hawalipi kwa wakati unaofaa. Pia wengine hawaji mikutano au wanachelewa sana. Pia shida yetu kubwa hasa ni utafiti wa masoko ya uuzaji. PCV alisikiza yote kiongozi aliyoyasema na akamwambia atazungumzia juu ya utafiti wa masoko ya nje. PCV alisema, "Mkitaka utafiti bora wa masoko, ni vizuri kuzungumza na wateja wenu vizuri. Mwaulize, ni viondo vya aina gani wanavyovipenda na kuangalia wapinzani wenu wanauza viondo vya aina gani. Pia ni vizuri kujua wapinzani wenu ni nani, wako wapi, je wao ni wapya katika biashara, kwa nini wateja wenu wanawakujia nyinyi. Pia mjiulize kama mlichagua mahali mlipo kwa sababu zenu binafsi ama ni kwamba patawapatia uuzaji wa hali ya juu. Na pia, mjiulize kama biashara yenu ingenufaika iwapo mngehama. Kiongozi alifurahi sana kwa mafunzo aliyoyapata kutoka kwa PCV na akamshukuru sana halafu wakaagana.	One day Peace Corps Volunteer scheduled to meet with Asego group leader for a second time. After meeting him . The Peace Corps Volunteer started with greetings and ended up asking whether the (group leader) can give him a history about their group's business. The leader started by saying, "Our group started in the last two years and we started with fifty members and we decided to contribute twenty shillings a member but others have not registered until now. In that case for those who have registered and have paid the whole amount are twenty five members (people) members decided to meet twice a week and weave basket. We sold three hundred baskets in foreign markets. Since we started this group, we have done different developments like buying Posho Mill and some we have distributed to members. Members also have benefited in many ways like paying school fees others have got loans which they have paid without interest and others have constructed houses. Though members have benefited in many ways, others after getting loans didn't pay at the right time. Also others do not come for the meetings or they get late. Also our big problem is marketing research. The volunteer listened to what the leader was saying and told him that he will talk about foreign market research. PCV said, "if you want good market research. It is good to talk with customers nicely. Ask them, which type of viondo (baskets) they would like; and find out what their competitors are selling. Also is good to know who their competitors are, their location, and their experience about the business, why your customers are coming to you. Also ask yourselves if you chose the location where you are on your own accord or the location will give you high sales. And also, ask yourselves if your business would have benefited if you had quit the location. The group leader got ver happy for the lessons he got from the PCV and thanked him alot then bid farewell to each other.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

KISWAHILI		VOCABULARY
Singular	**Plu.**	**English**
Kikundi(N)	Vikundi	Group
Mjitoleaji(N)	Wajitoleaji	Volunteer
Kiongozi(N)	Viongozi	Leader
Kukutana (V)		To meet
Kusalamia (V)		To greet
Mwanachama(N)	Wanachama	Member
Kuamua(N)		To decide
Memba(N)	Memba	Member
Kujiandikisha (V)		To register
Kulipa (V)		To pay
kushona (V)		To weave
Kiondo(N)	Viondo	Basket
Kuuaza (V)		To sell
Tangu(Adj)		Since
Maendeleo (N)	Maendeleo	Development
Mbali Mbali (Adj)		Various
Kusagia (V)		To grind
Kugawia (V)		To share to
Kufaidika (V)		Benefited
Karo (N)	Karo	Fee
Mkopo(N)	Mikopo	Loan
Riba (N)	Riba	Interest
Kujenga(V)		To build
Ingawa(Conj)		Even though
Kufaa (v)		To suit / to fit
Hasa (Ad)		Especially
Utafiti (N)		Research
Kusikiza (V)		To listen to
Bora (Adj)		Better
Mteja(N)	Wateja	Customer
Aina (N)		Type
Mpinzani(N)	Wapinzani	Rival
Kuchagua (V)		To choose
Binafsi		Oneself / personall
Kunufaika (V)		To benefit
Kuhama (V)		To move
Kushukuru (V)		To appreciate

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE 1:

1. Kwa nini PCV alitaka kukutana na kiongozi wa kikundi?
2. Kikundi cha Asego kinafanya biashara gani?
3. Wanachama wa kikundi cha Asego wamefaidika vipi?
4. PCV aliwapa mawaidha gani?
5. Wanachama waliamua kukutana mara ngapi kwa wiki?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : CHICKEN RAISING

COMPETENCY: PROBLEMS AND PROFITS INVOLVED IN BUSINESSES

Mwanapisko Frank alialikwa na kikundi cha wanawake katika mwea kwasababu walitaka mawaidha juu ya kuanzisha biashara.

Frank aliwashauri na akawaeleza juu ya biashara mbali mbali kama kufuga nguruwe, na kuku kushona na kuuza viondoo.

Baada ya mwaka mmoja Frank aliwatembelea na akawauliza kuhusu biashara waliyoanzisha.

PCV: Mlianza biashara gani?	**PCV:** What business did you start
Mwikali: Tuliona ni rahisi kufuga kuku kwasababu kutengeneza nyumba ya kuku si ghali, vyakula ni bei rahisi, na pesa tutakazopata kwa biashara hii ni nyingi.	**Mwikali:** We saw it is easy to raise chickens because making houses for chickens is not expensive, prices for food are cheap, and money made from this business is alot.
PCV: Mlianza vipi?	**PCV:** How did you start?
Mwikali: Kila mwanachama alitoa shilingi elfu moja na tulitengeneza nyumba, tulinunua vyakula na tulinunua kuku kumi na mbili na jogoo mmoja.	**Mwikali:** Every member donated 1000/- and we made the houses and we bought 12 hens and 1 cock.
Kuku hawa walitaga mayai na tukayaweka kwa visanduku mahali palipokuwa na joto kidogo; kwa siku ishirini na moja, halafu tuliwaweka vifaranga mahali pa joto kwa mwezi mmoja.	The hens laid eggs and we kept them in boxes in an incubator for 21 days and then we kept the chicks in an incubator for 1 month.
Siku ya pili tuliwalisha kwa "chicken marsh" ambayo ni chakula cha kujenga mwili kwa miezi miwili.	On the second day we fed them on "chicken marsh" which is a building food for 2 months.
Kisha tuliwapeleka kuku hawa kwa nyumba kubwa na tulianza kuwapa mboga mara tatu kwa wiki.	Then, we took these hens in a big house and started feeding them on vegetables thrice a week.
Sasa kuku hawa wanataga mayai mia mbili kwa siku na tunauza kwa mahoteli makubwa.	Now these hens lay 200 eggs per day and we sell them in big hotels.
PCV: Mna shida yoyote ?	**PCV**: Do you have any problem?
Mwikali: Ndiyo wakati mwingine mvua hunyesha sana na barabara huwa na matope mengi sana na sisi huchelewa kupeleka mayai hotelini.	**Mwikali:** Yes, sometimes it rains a lot and roads are very muddy and we delay in taking the eggs to the hotel.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Pia sisi huita daktari mara kwa mara kwasababu, kuku wana magonjwa mengi; Watu wengi siku hizi wameanzisha biashara hii lakini sisi hupunguza bei ya mayai na hii ni safi kwa hivyo wateja wanatupenda, vyakula vya kuku ni bei ghali na pia tunalipa askari kila mwezi. **PCV:** Unajua, kwa kila biashara kuna faida na hasara. **Mwikali:**Tunakushukuru sana kwa mawaidha ambayo ulitupatia kuhusu biashara. **PCV:**Kwaheri, nitarudi tena.	We also call the veterinary doctor time after time because hens have lots of diseases. Many people these days have started these business but we reduce the prices of eggs, and so customers like us, chicken food has become expensive and we also pay a guard every month. **PCV**: You know in every business there's a profit and a loss. **Mwikali:** We appreciate your advise about business. **PCV:** Bye bye, I will be back again.

MSAMIATI: **VOCABULARY**

Msamiati	**Plural**	**Vocabulary**
Kualika(V)		To invite
Mawaidha(N)	Mawaidha	Advice
Kushauri(V)		To advice
Mbali Mbali(Adj)		Various
Kufuga(V)		To Raise
Kushona(V)		To weave
Kuhusu(V)		Concerning / About
Rahisi(Adj)		Easy
Kutengeneza(V)		To make
Ghali(Adj)		Expensive
Jogoo(N)	Jogoo	Roosters
Kifaranga(v)	Vifaranga	Chicks
Kutaga(V)		To lay
Kunyesha(V)		To rain
Kupeleka(V)		To take
Ugonjwa(V)	Magonjwa	Diseases
Barabara(N)	Barabara	Road
Safi (Adj)		Clean
Kiondoo(N)	Viondoo	Baskets

ZOEZI - EXERCISE

1. Kwanini mwanapisko alikuwa na kikundi?
2. Kila mwanachama alitoa pesa ngapi?
3. Kuku hawa wanataga mayai mangapi kila siku?
4. Kikundi kina shida gani?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : MICRO CREDIT

COMPETENCY: SOLVING BUSINESS PROBLEMS USING LOANS THROUGH PEACE CORPS VOLUNTEERS

Julia ni mwanapisko katika kijiji cha kathera. Anafanya kazi na vikundi vya wanawake. Jisaidie women group ni moja wapo ya hivi vikundi. Hao hulima pamba lakini wamekumbwa na matatizo katika hilo shamba. Mbegu na madawa imekuwa ghali sana, nafasi ya kutosha ya kupalilia na wanafikiria jinsi ya kukabidhiana na hii shida. Wengine wanafikiria ni vizuri kufyeka hii pamba na kuanzisha mradi mwingine, lakini Alice, mkubwa wao anaona ni vizuri amuone Julia
kabla ya kuchukua hatua yoyote kwa sababu katika soko la kimataifa pamba ina pesa nzuri.

Julia is a PCV at Kathera Village. He works with women groups. Jisaidie women group is one of these groups. They grow cotton but they have problems in the shamba. Seeds and herbicides have become very expensive, weeding time is not enough and they are thinking of a way to deal with this problem. Some think its good to slash the cotton and start another project, but Alice, their boss thinks it is wise to see Julia before taking any step because in the international market cotton has good money.

Alice: Hujambo, Bibi Julia?	**Alice:** Hallo bibi Julia?
Julia: Sijambo, Alice; karibu.	**Julia:** Hallo Alice, Welcome.
Alice Nimekuja hapa kukuona juu ya matatizo ya kikundi chetu cha jisaidie women group.	**Alice:** I have come here to see you about problems facing your group (Jisaidie Women Group).
Julia: Oh! Karibu sana.	**Julia:** Oh! welcome.
Alice: Kikundi chetu kimekumbwa na matatizo ya fedha na tunafikiria kuwachana na shamba letu la pamba kwa hayo matatizo.	**Alice**: Our group has been faced by financial problems and we are thinking of leaving our cotton farm because of those problems.
Julia: Unajua kuwachana na shamba hilo si kutatua shida zenu. Nitakuonyesha njia ya kutatua shida zenu kwa kupata mkopo ili mweze kuendeleza shamba lenu bila matatizo mengi. Utarudi kwa wanavikundi wako na kuwafahamisha ya kwamba mtapata mkopo na ningependa ulete kiwango fulani cha pesa. Ni lazima kila mwana kamati achange shilingi ishirini.	**Julia:** You know leaving the farm does not solve the problem. I will show you a way of solving your problem by getting a loan so that you can continue farming without many problems. You will go back to your group members and inform them that you will get a loan and I would like you to bring a certain amount of money. It's compulsory for every member to contribute 20/=
Alice: Oh!Asante sana kwa kunijulisha ya kwamba tunaweza kupata mkopo ili tuendeleze shamba letu. Haya kwaheri tutaonana wiki ijayo ili twende kupata huu mkopo.	**Alice**: Oh: Thank you very much for informing me that we are able to get a loan so that we can continue farming. Okay. bye bye, we will see each other next week so that we can go and get this loan.
Julia: Haya kwaheri. Tutaonana.	**Julia:** Okay, Bye bye will see each other.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI	MISAMIATI	VOCABLARY
SINGULAR:	**PLURAL**	
Kijiji(N)	Vijiji	Village
Kikundi(N)	Vikundi	Group
Kujisaidia (v)		To help Oneself
Hulima(V)		Usually farms
Pamba(N)	Pamba	Cotton
Kukumbwa (v)		Burdened
Tatizo (n)		Problem
Mbegu(N)	Mbegu	Seed
Ghali (ad)		Expensive
Kupalilia (v)		To weed
Jinsi		The way
Kukabidhi (v)		To tackle
Kufyeka (v)		To slash
Hatua		Step
Mradi (n)	Miradi	Project
Kimataifa		World Market
Fedha(N)	Fedha	Money
Kuwaacha(N)		To Leave
Mkopo	Mikopo	Loan
Kutatua (v)		Solve
Kufahamisha (v)		To make understand
Kiwango		Certain Amount
Lazima		Must
Kuchanga (v)		contribute
Mwanakamati (n)		Committee member
Kuendeleza(V)		To Improve
Kwamba		That
Ili		So that

READ ALOUD

Moja wapo
Jinsi ya kukabidhiana
Mradi Mwingine
Soko la kimataifa
Matatizo ya Kikundi
Kupata Mkopo
Kiwango Fulani
Mwana Kamati
Kuchukua hatua

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

EXERCISE

1) Kikundi cha jisaidie Women Group hulima nini?
2) Eleza matatizo ya kikundi hiki.
3) Kikundi kinafikira Kufanya nini?
4) Kila mwanakamiti anatakiwa kuchanga pesa ngapi?
5) MwanaPisko alimsaidia vipi?

KIKUNDI CHA "WITEITHIE!

Kikundi cha witeithie kilianzishwa mwaka wa 1968. Kikundi hiki kilianzishwa na wanachama kumi pekee. Waanzilishi wa kikundi hiki walikuwa na nia ya kujenga matanki ya maji, kwa sababu katika mwaka wa 1968, mvua haikunyesha. Waliona vizuri wajenge tanki, ili wakati wa mvua waweze kujiwekea maji.	Witeithie group was started in 1968. This group was started by ten members only. The pioneers of this group wanted to build water tanks because in the year 1968, there was no rain. They found it wise to build water tanks in order for them to store water.
Kwanza waliwachagua viongozi wao halafu wakajiandikisha kwa serikali. Walifungua akaunti katika benki kwa sababu walitaka kuweka pesa pole pole. Wanachama walichanga shilingi elfu moja kila mtu. Baandaye walianza kununua vifaa vya kujenga, kama vile simiti, mawe na mchanga na kuweka. Mwishoe walijenga tanki moja, ambalo lilivutia watu wengi katika kijiji. Watu zaidi walijiunga na kufikia wanachama ishirini na watano.	First they chose their leaders then they registered with the government. They opened a bank account because they wanted to deposit money slowly by slowly. The members contributed 1,000/= each. Later they started buying building materials like cement, bricks and sand and kept them. Lastly they built one tank which attracted many people in the village. Many people joined and reached 25 members.
Shida wanazopata zinatokana na kutolipa matoleo ya mwezi kwa wakati unaofaa. Pia wanashida ya uwekaji wa pesa, na utumizi mbaya wa pesa. Kikundi hiki pia kina madeni mengi kutokana na matumizi mabaya.	The problems they get come from people failing to pay their monthly contributions during the acceptable time. They also have a problem in keeping cash and using money badly. This group also has debts from using money badly.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

DIALOGUE:	
PCV : Habari gani Bwana.	**PCV:** How are you sir?
Mwanachama: Nzuri sana, na wewe?	**Member**: Very fine and you?
PCV : Salama, nimekuja kuzungumza na wewe juu ya shida za kikundi.	**PCV:** Fine, I have come to talk to you about group problems.
Mwanachama: Vizuri sana, umefanya vizuri kuja kutusaidia.	**Member:** Thank you for coming to help us.
PCV : Ulinieleza mna shida ya uwekaji wa vitabu?	**PCV:** You told me you have problems with book keeping?
Mwanachama: Ndiyo, kwa sababu hatuwezi kujumulisha faida iko wapi?	**Member:** Yes, because we cant put together and see where the profit is.
PCV : Kwanza, mnahitaji kujua ni pesa ngapi, zilizo mkononi na ni ngapi zilizo benki.	**PCV:** First you need to know how much money you have in hand and bank.
Mwanachama: Lakini tunajua hivyo.	**Member:** But we know that
PCV : Ndiyo, lakini mnahitaji kuandika katika kitabu chenu cha kuweka pesa. Pia lazima kuandika na kueleza kule pesa zilizotoka na vile pesa zilitumiwa.	**PCV:** Yes, but you need to write in your cash book. Also you must write and explain where money comes from and how used.
Mwanachama: Sasa nimefahamu ni kwanini ni lazima tuandike hayo yote.	**Member:** Now I understand why we must note all that.
PCV : Baada ya kufanya hivyo, andika ni vitu gani vilivyo nunuliwa na ni kwa pesa ngapi. Halafu vile pesa zilivyo tumiwa.	**PCV:** After doing that, write how many things have been bought and for how much, then how cash has been spent.
Mwanachama: Asante sana, sisi tulikuwa hatuelezi matumizi ya pesa.	**Member:** Thank you very much we did not explain how we spend cash.
PCV : Pia unahitaji kuandika madeni yote au mkopo wa benki ikiwa kuna mkopo. Halafu mali iliyopo.	**PCV:** Also you need to write all debts and bank loans if there is. Then cash in hand.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI **VOCABULARY:**

Kiswahili	**Plural**	**English**
Kuanzishwa		to be started
Pekee		only
Nia		aim
Kunyesha		to rain
Kujenga		to build
Kuweka		to store
Kuchagua		to select
Kujiandikisha		to register
Akaunti		account
Wanachama		Members
Kuchanga		to contribute
Kifaa	Vifaa	materials
simiti	-	cement
Kuvutia	-	to atract
Kujiunga	-	to join
Matoleo		contribution
Utumizi		usage
Deni	madeni	loan
Kiongozi	viongozi	leaders
Kusaidia	-	to help
Kujumulisha	-	add up
Matumizi	-	usage
Mkopo	mikopo	loan

READ ALOUD - SOMA KWA SAUTI

Kikundi kilianzishwa
Kujenga tanki la maji
Kuchagua viongozi.
Kufungua akaunti ya benki.
Kununua vifaa
Kujiunga na kikundi.
Matoleo ya mwezi.
Uwekaji wa pesa.
Matumizi mabaya ya pesa
Kupata faida
Kuweka kitabu cha pesa
Mkopo wa benki

EXERCISE - MAZOEZI:
Answer the following questions - Jibu maswali haya.

1. Kikundi cha Witeithie kilianzishwa mwaka gani?
2. Kikundi kilikuwa na nia gani?
3. Wanachama walikuwa na shida gani?
4. Kwanini wanachama walifungua akaunti?
5. Wanachama walichanga pesa ngapi?
6. Kwanza kikundi kilifanya nini?
7. Kikundi kilikuwa na shida gani?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: **A LETTER FROM MINISTRY OF HEALTH**

COMPETENCY: **A harsh, warning letter to businessmen / women of Mukuru urban council on good health care to officers incharge.**

A PCV at G.O.K Officers' Office

WIZARA YA AFYA S.L.P 7383 NAIROBI	MINISTRY OF HEALTH P.O. BOX 7383 NAIROBI
Kwa wenye nyumba za Biashara za Mukuru:	To Owners of Business Premises in Mukuru.
Kwa watu wote wa Mukuru ambao wana biashara ndogo ndogo kama:-Vioski ndogo vya chai chakula, Buchari za kuuza nyama, bekeri za mikate na vilabu vya pombe.	To all people of Mukuru who have small business like: small kiosks for selling tea, food, butchery, bakery and bars.
Huu ni wakati muhimu wao kupata vibali vya kazi kama leseni na wachunge mawaidha ya afya kama:- sindano ya afya ya kuwawezesha kuuza vyakula, maji safi, mazingara safi, vyombo kuandalia wateja na mwishowe Vyoo safi.	This is an important time for them to get work license and adhere to Ministry of Health advice like:- Ministry of Health's injection to enable them to sell food, clean water, good environment, utensils to serve customers and lastly clean toilets.
Wizara ya afya chini ya G.O.K imegundua kwamba wengi wa wafanya biashara hapa tarafa ya mukuru hawana vibali vya kazi na leseni na hali ya afya hapo kwa wakaaji iko hatatirini.	The Ministry of Health under the G.O.K. has realized that majority of business people here in Mukuru district don't have work license and the health condition of the residents is risky.
Hali hii isipotatuliwa haraka iwezekanavyo na wenye biashara, serikali haina budi kufunga mahali pao pa kufanyia biashara. Maofisa wa serikali wameulizwa wachunguze mahali hapo pa biashara mara moja!!	If this situation is not solved as soon as possible by business people the Government must close their places of business. Government Officers have been asked to investigate those business places immediately.
Wenu Provincial Medical Officer G.O.K. GITAU MBOGA	Yours Provincial Medical Officer, G.O.K Gitau Mboga

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAZUNGUMZO

PCV: Hujambo	**PCV:** Hallo
Afisa: Sijambo	**Officer:** Hallo
PCV: Habari za kazi	**PCV**: How is work?
Afisa: Salama tu. Tunaedelea	**Officer:** Very well, We are going on
PCV: Nimekuja kukuona kwa sababu mbali mbali	**PCV:** I have come to see you for various reasons.
Afisa: Karibu una mambo gani?	**Officer:** Welcome, what do you have?
PCV: Kwanza nimezungumza na wafanya biashara wa hapa mukuru na wameniambia kwamba wao huanza biashara ndogo ndogo lakini mara kwa mara zinafungwa na maofisa ambao wanahusika.	**PCV:** First, I have talked to business people here in Mukuru and they have told me that they usually start small business but time to time they are closed by the concerned officers.
Afisa:Hiyo ni kweli kabisa. Kuna sababu nyingi. Wafanya biashara wengine kama wale ambao wana :- vioski ndogo vya chai, chakula, buchari za kuuza nyama, bekeri za mikate na vibali vya pombe hawafuati utaratibu mzuri wa afya kama vile inavyotakikana. - kwa mfano unaona barua hii kutoka kwa ofisi kuu ya serikali yetu wizara ya afya inavyosema.	**Officer**: That is very true. There are many reasons. Some business people like those with small Kiosk of tea, food, butchery bakery and bars don't follow good procedure of health as required. For example you see this letter from the main office of the Ministry of Health.
PCV: Ninaona kweli	**PCV:** I really see.
Afisa: Pia kuna wafanya biashara ambao hawana leseni za kufanya biashara zao, na kwa hivyo hawaangalii sana afya ya wakaaji wa hapa.	**Officer:** Also there are business people who don't consider the health of the residents.
PCV : Unafikiri ni mambo gani ambayo yanasababisha shida hizi?	**PCV:** What do you think are some of the things that cause these problems?
Afisa: Kwanza ningependa wewe kama mtu wa biashara ndogo kuwafunza au kuwapa wafanya biashara mawaidha juu ya afya ikiwa wanatarajia kuanza biashara za kuwauzia vitu ambavyo vinatumika kama vyakula.	**Officer:** First, I would like you as a small business person to teach or give business people ideas on health if they expect to start business to sell things like food.
PCV : Hilo ni wazo nzuri sana. Nitafanya hivyo kwanza.	**PCV**: That is a good idea. I will do that first.
Afisa: Asante.	**Officer:** Thank you.
PCV : Asante sana pia na kwaheri ya kuonana. **Afisa:** Kwaheri.	**PCV:** Thank you very much and bye bye. **Officer:** Bye bye.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Msamiati		**Vocabulary**
Singular	**Plural**	**English**
Wizara	Wizara	Ministry
Afya	Afya	Health
Kioski	Vioski	Stall
Buchari	Buchari	Butchery
Bekeri	Bekeri	Bakery
Kilabu	Vilabu	Clubs
Kibali	Vibali	Permits
Waidha	Mawaidha	Advice
Sindano	Sindano	Medical shot
Leseni	Leseni	License
Safi	Safi	Cleanliness
Zingara	Mazingara	Environment
Kuandalia(V)		To serve
Mteja (N)	Wateja	Customer
Mwishoe	-	Lastly
Tarafa (N)	Tarafa	Location
Mkaaji (N)	Wakaaji	Residents
Hatari (Adj)	Hatari	Danger
Kutatua (v)		To solve
Kuweza (V)		To beable - can
Budi		No escape
Kuchunguza (V)		To inspect
Mbali mbali (N)		Various reasons
Jambo (JI/MA) Mambo		Officer
Kuhusika (V)		To concern
Utaratibu (N)		Instructions
Kuangalia (V)		To look into
Kusababisha (V)		To cause
Kutarajia (V)		To expect
Wazo (N)		Suggestion

SOMA KWA SAUTI:

Wizara ya afya
Vioski vya vyakula
Buchari ya kuuza nyama
Bekeri ya mikate
Vilabu vya pombe
Mwawaidha ya afya
Sindano ya afya
Maji safi
Mazingara safi
Vyombo safi
Vibali vya kazi
Sababu mbali mbali
Utaratibu mzuri
Wazo nzuri

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE:
Tafisiri sentensi hizi - Translate these sentences:

Sababu mbali mbali
Mazingara safi
Vibali vya kazi
Utaratibu wa afya
Wakaji wa tarafa hili

ZOEZI LA PILI: - 2ND EXERCISE:
Andika kwa wingi - Write in Plurals:

Kibali cha kazi
Wazo moja
Mfanya biashara
Mkaaji wa hapa.
Afisa wa afya
Kitu ambacho kinatumika

ZOEZI LA TATU: - EXERCISE THREE:

1. Wizara ya afya imefanya nini?
2. Kwa nini wizara ya afya imeandika barua kwa afisa wa afya?
3. Wizara ya afya imegundua nini juu ya wafanya biashara wa Mukuru?
4. Wafanya biashara wanahitaji kufanya nini?
5. Kwa nini PCV amekwenda ofisi ya afisa wa afya?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : IMPROVED STOVES

COMPETENCIES: INTRODUCE THE CONCEPT OF IMPROVED JIKOS AS A MEANS OF SOLVING RESPIRATORY PROBLEMS OF THE SHELTER USERS.

Scott **A Volunter visits a Masai Family that live in a Manyata that is smoky and stuffy. After a few minutes the volunteer starts coughing and shedding tears due to the smoke. The host is a bit concerned.**

DIALOGUE:	
Mama - Pole bwana Scott kwa moshi - tunaweza kuketi nje kwa sababu hapa ndani kuna moshi sana.	**Mama**: I am sorry for the smoke. We can sit outside because there is a lot of smoke in here.
Scott - Ndiyo bibi ninafikiri tunahitaji kuzungumza juu ya hii shida ya moshi.	**Scott:** Yes, I think we need to talk, about this problem of smoke.
Mama - Ninaweza kufanya nini ili kupunguza moshi ndani ya nyumba?	**Mama:** What can I do so as to reduce smoke inside the house.
Scott - Unahitaji kutumia Maendeleo Jiko (Improved Jiko). Pia unahitaji kuweka madirisha katika nyumba yako ili kupata hewa safi.	**Scott:** You need to use an Improved Jiko. You also need to put windows so that you get fresh air.
Mama - Sisi tumezoea moshi, kwa sababu nyumba zetu hazina madirisha.	**Mama:** We are used to smoke because our houses do not have windows.
Scott - Ikiwa utavuta moshi kwa muda mrefu unaweza kupata magonjwa ya kifua kama kukohoa. Pia unahitaji kuweka bomba la kutoa moshi nje.	**Scott:** If you get too much smoke for a long period of time you can get diseases such as coughing. You also need to put chimney to get out smoke.
Mama - Maendeleo jiko ni nini?	**Mama**: What is an Improved Jiko?
Scott- Maendeleo Jiko ni jiko la kisasa. Linatengenezwa kwa kutumia udongo , changarawe na maji. Pia watu wa jua kali wanaweza kukusaidia.	**Scott:** An Improved Jiko is a modern stove. It is made from clay, sand and water. The Jua Kali artisans can help you.
Mama - Maendeleo jiko lina umuhimu mwingine?	**Mama:** Does the Improved Jiko have another importance?
Scott - Ndiyo jiko la aina hii inatumia kuni chache na ni njia safi ya kupika pia kwa sababu nyumba haitakuwa chafu.	**Scott:** Yes, it uses less firewood and it is a clean way of cooking because the house does not get dirty.
Mama - Asante sana, nitakuita kwa maswali zaidi.	**Mama**: Thank you very much. I will call you for more questions.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI	MISAMIATI	VOCABULARY
Moshi		Smoke
Nje		Out
Kwa sababu		Because
Ndani		Inside
Shida		problem
Nyumba		House
Jiko	Meko	Stove
Maendeleo		Development
Dirisha	Madirisha	Window
Safi		Clean
Ugonjwa	Magonjwa	Diseases
Kifua (V)		Chest
Bomba la Moshi		Ventilation
Pia		Also
Hewa		Air
Udongo		Soil
Jiwe	Mawe	Stone
Maji		Water
Tumia		Use
Pata		To get
Hitaji		Need
Kuni		Fire Wood
Aina		Type
Chache		Few

EXERCISE ONE:

Andika sentenzi hizi kwa wingi.

1. Ninahitaji kutumia Maendeleo Jiko
2. Nimezoea moshi
3. Anaweza kufanya nini ili kupunguza moshi.
4. Utavuta kwa muda mrefu

EXERCISE TWO:

Jibu Maswali haya:

1. Kwa nini mama alimwambia Scott watoke nje?
2. Maendeleo Jiko ni nini?
3. Kwa nini wamasai wanazoea moshi?
4. Maendeleo Jiko lina umuhimu gani?
5. Mama anaweza kufanya nini ili kupunguza moshi ndani ya nyumba

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : UUZAJI / SOKO - MARKETING

COMPETENCY: WAJITOLEAJI WATAWEZA KUFUNDISHA WAFANYI BIASHARA JUU YA UUZAJI WA BIDHAA ZAO.

THE VOLUNTEER WILL BE ABLE TO TEACH BUSINESS PEOPLE ON HOW TO MARKET THEIR PRODUCTS.

PCV - Habari zenu?	**PCV -** How are you?
Kikundi - Nzuri sana.	**Group** - Very fine?
PCV - Leo nimekuja hapa kuzungumza juu ya uuzaji Uuzaji ni nini?	**PCV -** Today I have come here to talk about marketing. what is marketing?
Wana Biashara - Uuzaji ni kuuza bidhaa	**Business Person** - Marketing is selling products.
PCV - Asante sana kwa jibu, pia uuzaji ni shughuli za kuchagua bidhaa au huduma, kuweka bei kwa bidhaa, kupanga uuzaji na kutangaza kwa wateja.	**PCV -** Thank you for the answer. Also marketing is the activity of selecting products or services, pricing, organizing for sales and informing the customers.
Mwana Biashara: - Nitafanya nini kuwa na uuzaji mzuri?	**Business Person:** - What will I do to have a good market?
PCV - Kwanza jua wateja wangependa kununua nini, na tafuta njia tofauti za kutangaza bidhaa zako.	**PCV -** First, know what your customers would like to buy and look for different ways of advertising your products.
Mwana biashara : Unaweza kutangaza bidhaa vipi?	**Business Person:** How can you advertise your products?
PCV - Chagua jina la biashara yako vizuri, tangaza kwa vibao vizuri, weka bei kwa bidhaa zako na juana na majirani wengi kwa kuvutia wateja.	**PCV -** Choose a good name for your business, advertise through sign boards well, stick prices on your products and know your neighbors well to attract customers.
Mwana biashara: -Nimejaribu hayo lakini sioni maendeleo katika biashara yangu.	**Business Person:** I have tried all that but I don't see any development in my business.
PCV - Pia unahitaji kuwa na furaha kwa wateja wako kila wakati na pia ni vizuri kuweka biashara pahali pazuri.	**PCV** - Also you need to be friendly to your customers always and also its good to choose a good location for your business.
Mwenyekiti - Asante sana, tumejifunza mengi tutajaribu kufanya hayo.	**Chair Person -** Thank you very much, we have learnt a lot we will try to do that.
PCV - Asante sana tutaonana wiki ijayo.	**PCV** - Thank you very much and see you next week.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI	**VOCABULARY**
Uuzaji	Marketing
Bidhaa	Products / Items
JIbu	Answer
Shughuli	Activity
Huduma	Service
Bei	Price
Mteja	Customer
Tofauti	Different
Njia	Way (s)
Biashara	Business
Vibao	Sign board
Majirani	Neighbours
Maendeleo	Development
Furaha	Happiness / Joy
Pahali	Place
Kuzungumza	To talk / covers
Kuchagua	Choose
Kupanga	Plan / Arrange
Kutangaza	Advertise
Kununua	To buy
Kutafuta	To look for / find
Kujuana	To kow each other
Kuvutia	To attract

EXERCISE I

Jibu Maswali Haya:

1. Uuzaji ni nini?
2. Andika njia tatu za kutangaza biashara

EXERCISE 2:

Andika sentensi kwa kutumia maneno haya.

Uuzaji
Kutangaza
Bidhaa
Pahali
Kujuana
Kuvutia
Huduma

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: PROPOSAL LETTER - BARUA YA MAPENDEKEZO

COMPETENCY: Be able to teach a group how to write a Poposal Letter - kuweza kufundisha kikundi jinsi ya kuandika barua ya mapendekezo.

PCV - Hamjambo mabibi na mabwana?	**PCV -** How are you ladies and gentlemen
Wanachama - Hatujambo. Na wewe?	**Wanachama** - We are fine and you?
PCV - Sijambo asanteni. Kwa sababu mna shida ya pesa za mradi wenu, leo nitawafunza jinsi ya kuandika barua ya mapendekezo.	**PCV -** Fine thank you. Because you have money problem with your project , today I am going to teach you on how to write a Proposal.
Mwanachama: - Barua ya mapendekezo ni nini?	**Wanachama** - What is a Proposal Letter.
PCV - Swali nzuri sana. Barua ya mapendekezo ni barua ambayo unaandika kwa shirika la mikopo ili kupata pesa za mradi.	**PCV** - Good question. A Proposal Letter is a letter that you write to a loan giving organization to get money for project.
Mwanachama - Barua hii unaandika vipi?	**Wanachama** - How do you write this letter?
PCV - Kwa kuandika barua hii unafuata njia hizi.	**PCV** - In writing this letter you will follow these steps:

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

1. Sababu za kutaka pesa. • Historia ya mradi (wanachama wangapi / uongozi, kikundi kimefanya kazi gani hapo awali). • Eleza kwanini unataka pesa. • Nani anahusika? • Kwanini mnataka mradi huu?	**1. Reason as to why you need money:** a) Back ground of the group (leadership). b) Previous activities of the group. c) Explain why you need the money d) Who is affected e) Why do you want this project.
2. Lengo / Matarajio • Eleza lengo la mradi • Eleza lengo la mradi • Eleza mradi utachukua muda gani? • Eleza ni nani atafaidika na atafaidika vipi?	**2. Goals and Objectives:** a) Describe the goal of the project b) Describe the time bond c) Specify who are the beneficiaries and how they will benefit.
3. Mpango wa Kazi: • Eleza kazi • Mtu na kazi yake • Watu watahitaji vifaa gani na jinsi ya kuweka vifaa hivi. • Kama mradi unaleta faida • Eleza mpango wa kutafuta soko • Kupokea malipo na kuweka vitabu	**3. Action Plan:** a) Define tasks. b) Person responsible for specific tasks d) Materials needed and how to store them. e) If the project is revenue-generating include plans for marketting, receiving payment and bookkeeping.
4. Makadirio: • Onyesha kazi na vifaa vizuri vya kufanya kila kazi • Onyesha gharama ya kila kazi na kama gharama hii inafaa. • Onyesha mchango wa asili mia ishirini na tano (25%) wa kikundi. • Onyesha mchango wa kutoka pahali pengine	**4. Cost - Break down / Budget:** a) Identify the tools necessary to carry out each task b) Demonstrate that costs of each task are reasonable. c) Show group contribution of 25% d) Show contribution from other sources.
5. KUCHUNGUZA MRADI: • Onyesha jinsi utachunguza kuendelea kwa mradi. • Onyesha ni nani atachunguza kuendelea kwa mradi • Eleza jinsi mradi utaendelea zaidi.	**5. Monitoring and Evaluating the Project:** a) Illustrate how you are going to monitor the project. b) Show who will be responsible for monitoring the Project. c) Show how the Project will continue beyond the implementation period.

MSAMIATI		**VOCABULARY**
Mradi	(n)	Project
Barua	(n)	Letter
Shirika	(n)	Organization
Mkopo	(n)	Loan
Njia	(n)	Way / road / path
Historia	(n)	Background
Kikundi	(n)	Group

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Wanachama	(n)	Members
Lengo	(n)	Aim / objective
Mpango	(n)	Plan
Vifaa	(n)	Tools / materials
Uongozi	(n)	Leadership
Faida	(n)	Profit / gain
Makadirio	(n)	Budget
Gharama	(n)	Cost
Mchango	(n)	Contribution
Asili mia	(n)	Percentage
Kuhusika	(v)	To be involved
Kuchukua	(v)	To take
Kufaidika	(v)	To benefit
Kupokea	(v)	To receive
Kuonyesha	(v)	To show
Kuchunguza	(v)	To monitor

EXERCISE:

1. Unaandika barua ya mapendekezo kwa nani?

2. Barua ya mapendekezo ni nini?

3. Kuna hatua ngapi katika barua ya mapendekezo?

4. Katika hatua ya kwanza unahitaji kuandika nini?

5. Katika hatua ya pili unahitaji kuandika nini?

6. Katika hatua ya tatu unahitaji kuandika nini?

7. Katika hatua ya nne na ya tano unahitaji kuandika nini?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : FEASIBILITY STUDY UTAFITI

COMPETENCY :TEACH THE COMMUNITY THE IMPORTANCE OF CARRYING OUT A FEASIBILITY STUDY STARTING ANY BUSINESS / PROJECT.

SOKO KABLA KUFUNDISHA JAMII UMUHIMU WA KUFANYA UTAFITI WA YA KUANZA BIASHARA AU MRADI.

Mwenyekiti- Hamjambo mabibi na mabwana. Leo tunafuraha kuwa na mjitoleaji au mgeni kutoka Peace Corps. Atazungumza juu ya umuhimu wa kufanya utafiti wa soko kabla ya kuanza biashara au mradi. Haya karibu mgeni.	**Chariman-** Hallo ladies and gentlemen. Today we are happy to be with a volunteer or visitor from Peace Corps. He will talk about the importance of feasibility study. Okay! Welcome visitor.
PCV- Asanteni sana. Je kabla ya kuanza biashara unahitaji kufanya nini?	P**CV -** Thank you very much. What do you need to do before starting a business / project?
Bibi X - Pahali na pesa.	**Bibi x:-** Place and money.
PCV - Ndiyo! lakini kwanza unahitaji kujua ikiwa biashara inawezekana, ina soko na inaweza kuleta faida.	**PCV:** Yes! but first you need to find out if the business is doable, marketable and profitable.
Bwana A - Utajuaje biashara inawezekana, inasoko na faida?	**Bwana-** How will you know the business is doable, marketable and profitable.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

PCV -Kuna njia sita muhimu za kufuata kabla ya kuanza biashara au huduma ya kuanza biashara au mradi.	**PCV** - There are six important steps to follow before starting a business or project.
Kwanza: chagua bidhaa au huduma ya kuuza **Pili:** Chunguza ikiwa watu watanunua bidhaa au huduma. **Tatu:** Amua jinsi biashara itaendeshwa. **Nne:** Hesabu gharama za biashara **Tano:** Kadiria mapato kutokana na uuzaji **Sita:** Kata shauri! Biashara hii ni wazo nzuri?	• **1st** choose product or service to sell • **2nd** find out if people will buy the product or service • **3rd** determine how the business will operate • **4th** Calculate business expenses • **5th** estimate sales income • **6th** decide! is the business a good idea?
Member- Ni hayo tu?	**Member:-** Is that all?
PCV - La! kabla ya kuanza biashara unahitaji kuwa na pesa. Labda kutoka kwa akiba yako, marafiki, jamaa, benki au mashirika ya mikopo.	**PCV** - No! before starting a business or project you need to have money / capital from your savings, friends, family, banks or loaning organizations.
Member - Tutapataje pesa kutoka kwa mashirika ya mikopo?	**Member**:- How can one access loans from these organizations.
PCV - Swali nzuri sana. Utahitaji kujua jinsi ya kuandika barua ya mapendekezo au "Proposal Writing", lakini tutajifunza jinsi ya kuandika wiki ijayo.	**PCV -**Good questions you need to know how to write a Proposal Letter. However, we shall learn how to write one next week.
Mwenyekiti - Haya asanteni sana. Asante pia mgeni tutaonana wiki ijayo.	**Chairman:-** Okay! Thank you very much. Thank you too visitor. See you next week.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

SOMA KWA SAUTI - READ ALOUD

Umuhimu wa kufanya utafiti.
Pahali na pesa
Biashara inawezekana
Kuleta faida
Ina soko
Chagua bidhaa
Huduma ya kuuza
Hesabu gharama
Kadiria mapato
Kata shauri
Kuwa na pesa
Mashirika ya mikopo
Barua ya mapendekezo

MSAMIATI	MISAMIATI	VOCABULARY
Utafiti (N)	-	Research / feasibility
Kuwezekana (V)	-	To be possible
Kuchagua (V)	-	Choose
Mradi (N)	Miradi	Project
Kukadiria (V)	-	To budget / estimate
Gharama (N)	-	Expense
Kuchunguza (V)		Find out
Huduma (N)	-	Service / aid
Bidhaa (N)		Item /. Ware / Goods
Shirika (N)	Mashirika	Organization
Mkopo (N)	Mikopo	Loan
Pendekezo (N)	Mapendekezo	Proposal
Kukata shauri		Decide

EXERCISE 1 - ZOEZI LA KWANZA

Andika sentensi ukitumia maneno yafuatayo - Write sentenses using the following words.

a) Bidhaa
b) Kuchagua
c) Gharama
d) Utafiti
e) Kata shauri

EXERCISE 2; ZOEZI LA PILI

Andika njia sita za kufuata kabla ya kuanza biashara. Write six steps for a feasibility study.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : KITABU CHA PESA

COMPETENCIES: BE ABLE TO TEACH A BUSINESS PERSON HOW TO KEEP A CASH BOOK

KUFUNDISHA MFANYI BIASHARA JINSI YA KUWEKA KITABU CHA PESA

PCV - How are you?	**PCV** -Habari yako
B.P. - Very well	**Mfanyi Biashara: -** Njema sana.
PCV - How's business	**PCV -** Habari za biashara
B.P. - Not bad	**M. Biashara -** Si mbaya
PCV - Today we will talk about a cash s book	**PCV -** Leo tutazungumza juu ya kitabu cha pesa.
B.P. - What is a Cash Book.	**M. Biashara -** Je, kitabu cha pesa ni nini?
PCV - A Cash Book is a book to check cash in and cash out in a business.	**PCV -** Kitabu cha pesa ni kitabu cha kuangalia jinsi pesa zinaingia na kutoka katika biashara.
B.P. - Why does a business person need a cash book.	**Mr. Biashara -** Kwanini mfanyi biashara anahitaji kitabu cha pesa?
PCV. - Because he will know whether thebusiness is getting profit or loss what customers are buying / making the right things, costs so that you can figure out a good selling price.	**PCV -** Kwa sababu atajua kama biashara inapata faida au hasara, atajua wateja wanapenda nini na pia atajua bei nzuri ya kuuza bidhaa.
B.P. - When does a business person keep a cash book	**M. Biashara -** Mfanyi biashara anahitaji kuweka kitabu cha pesa lini?
PCV - All the time	**PCV -** Anahitaji kuweka wakati wote.
B.P. - Who keeps the cash book	**M. Biashara** - Nani anaweka kitabu cha pesa?
PCV - The business person	**PCV -** Mfanyi biashara mwenyewe.
B..P - Are there ways of keeping a cash book	**M. Biashara** - Kuna njia za kuweka kitabu cha pesa?
PCV - Yes, in a cash book you write all your daily transactions for a better understanding of the cash book here are a few examples.	**PCV -** Ndio, katika kitabu cha pesa, unaandika kile kinaendelea katika biashara kila siku. Ili ufahamu zaidi juu ya kitabu cha pesa, hapa chini kuna mifano.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

FEBRUARY TRANSACTIONS:	**KUNUNUA, KUUZA NA MATUMIZI YA PESA YA FEBRUARI.**
1/2/99 Buy stock 500 pieces at 10/= each 5,000.00	1/2/99 Ninanunua bidhaa 500 kwa shilingi kumi kwa moja Shs. 5,000.00
2/2/99 Sell stock 300 pieces at 15/= each 4,500.00	2/2/99 Uza bidhaa 300 kwa shilingi 15/= kwa moja Shs. 4,500.00
3/2/99 Pay January rent 1,500.00	3/2/99 Lipa kodi ya nyumba Shs. 1,500.00
5/2/99 Sell stock 200 pieces at 15/= each 3,000.00	5/2/99 Uza bidhaa 200 kwa shilingi 15/= kwa moja Shs. 3,000.00
7/2/99 Transfer money from bank 10,000.00	7/2/99 Toa pesa kutoka kwa benki Shs. 10,000.00
8/2/99 Buy stock 500 pieces at 10/= each 5,000.00	8/2/99 Nunua bidhaa 500 kwa shilingi 10/= kwa moja Shs. 5,000.00
9/2/99 Sell stock 300 pieces at 15/= each 4,500.00	9/2/99 Uza bidhaa 300 kwa shilingi 15/= kwa moja Shs. 4,500.00
11/2/99 Owner's salary 1,000.00	11/2/99 Kujilipa mshahara Shs. 1,000.00
12/2/99 Service charge municipal 100.00	12/2/99 Lipa kodi ya manispa Shs. 100.00
13/2/99 Sell stock 300 pieces at 15/= each 4,500.00	13/2/99 Uza bidhaa 300 kwa shilingi 15/= kwa moja Shs. 4,500.00
14/2/99 Buy stock 1000 pieces at 10/= each10,000.0	14/2/99 Nunua bidhaa 100 kwa shilingi 10/= kwa moja Shs. 10,000.00
15/2/99 Pays eletricity 250.00	15/2/99 Lipa stima Shs. 250.00
16/2/99 Sell stock 200 pieces at 15/= each 3,000.00	16/2/99 Uza bidhaa 200 kwa shilingi 15/= kwa moja Shs. 3,000.00
17/2/99 Transfer cash to bank account 5,000.00	17/2/99 Weka pesa kwa benki Shs. 5,000.00
20/2/99 Sell stock 300 pieces at 15/= each 4,500.00	20/2/99 Uza bidhaa 300 kwa shilingi 15/-= kwa moja Shs. 4,500.00
22/2/99 Sell stock 200 pieces at 15/= each 3,000.00	22/2/99 Uza bidhaa 200 kwa shilingi 15/= kwa moja Shs. 3,000.00
25/2/99 Owner's salary 1,000.00	25/2/99 Kujilipa mshahara Shs. 1,000.00
26/2/99 Salary for 2 assistants 2,000.00	26/2/99 Lipa mshahara wa wasaidizi wawili Shs. 3,000.00
26/2/99 Sell stock 200 pieces at 15/= each 3,000.00	26/2/99 Uza bidhaa 200 kwa shilingi 15/= Shs. 3,000.00
27/299 Loan repayment 2,000.00	27/2/99 Malipo ya mkopo Shs. 2,000.00

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

VOCABULARY

Business - Biashara
Cash Book - Kitabu cha pesa
Profit - Faida
Loss - Hasara
Customers - Wateja
Goods - Bidhaa
Price - Bei
Business person - Mfanyi biashara
Time - Wakati
Owner - Mwenyewe
Way - Njia
Example - Mfano

VERBS

To check - Kuangalia
Cash out - Pesa za kutoka
To need, - Kuhitaji
To write - Kuandika
To continue - Kuendelea

ZOEZI

1. Kitabu cha pesa ni nini?
2. Kwa nini mfanyi biashara anahitaji kitabu cha pesa?
3. Kuna njia za kuweka kitabu cha pesa?
4. Ni nani anaweka kitabu cha pesa?
5. Mfanyi biashara anahitaji kitabu cha pesa lini?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : QUALITIES OF A GOOD LEADER

COMPETENCY: FAMILIARISE THEMSELVES WITH TECHNICAL QUALITIES OF A GOOD LEADER.

DIALOGUE - MAZUNGUMZO **PCV -** Hamjambo **Mfanyi Biashara -** :Hatujambo **PCV -** Leo tutazungumza juu ya ubora wa kiongozi. **Mfanyi Biashara**: Ni nani anafaa kuwa kiongozi. Mtu mwaminifu, mtu ambaye ana uwezo wa kuleta maendelo, mtu ambaye ana hekima, mtu ambaye ameokoka. **PCV :** Sawa kabisa, lakini kiongozi mzuri ni yule anaweza Kupanga kazi vizuri Kupeana jukumu Kutatua shida Kupeana maagizo vizuri Kuwasiliana vizuri Kufuatilia maendeleo ya kazi vizuri **Mfanyi Biashara:** Kupanga kazi vizuri ni kupanga kazi vipi? **PCV :** Kupanga kazi vizuri ni kuangalia mbele (vision), kupanga mikutano mapema na kuwa na Agenda, kujulisha watu mapema na kuweka mikutano wakati unaofaa, n.k. kwa habari zaidi nitawapa karatasi ya kusoma juu ya kiongozi mzuri. **Mfanyi Biashara:** Oh Asante sana, sikujua kuna habari zaidi ya kiongozi mzuri. **PCV** : Karibuni sana, tutaonana wiki kesho.	**PCV** - Hi **Business person:**- Hi **PCV -** Today we wil talk about qualities of a good leader.Who is a good leader? **B.P. -** A honest person, a person who is able to bring development, a wise person, a saved person. **PCV -** Very well, but a good leader is that who is able to; - plan - organize - solve problems - clarify information - inform - monitor **B.P.-** Ho do you plan your work well? **PCV-** Planning well is having a vision, planning in good time and having clear agendas, informing people in advance about meetings and scheduling meetings at appropriate times etc For more information I will give you handouts on a good leader. **B.P.** - Thankyou very much I didn't know there was more news on being a good leader. **PCV** - Welcome, we will meet next week.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Planning - Mpango:

- Angalia mbele - kazi itakuwa vipi.
- Panga mikutano mapema na kuwa na agenda
- Julisha watu mapema.
- Panga mikutano wakati unaofaa.

Assigning Tasks - Kupeana Jukumu

- Eleza jukumu kwa makini.
- Eleza sababu za jukumu
- Angalia ufahamu
- Fuatilia uangalie kiitiko.

Problem Solving - Kutatua Shida

- Chukua jukumu la kumaliza shida
- Panga kazi kulingana na shida.
- Chunguza shida.
- Zungumza na wenzako kama ni lazima.
- Chukua uamuzi wa kutatua shida.

Instructions on How To Do a Task - Maagizo juu ya kufanya jukumu.

- Eleza sababu ya utaratibu.
- Onyesha na eleza utaratibu
- Wacha msaidizi wako aeleze utaratibu
- Wacha msaidizi wako aelezee kila kiwango
- Rekebisha jukumu
- Wacha watu wafanye mazoezi ya utaratibu.

Types of information to communicate - Aina ya habari za kuwasilisha

- Habari juu ya lengo, mipango, utaratibu, sheria, laani n.k.
- Habari juu ya faida, marupurupu na nafasi.
- Sema kwa njia nzuri jinsi wanaendelea na kazi
- Maendeleo ya ofisi, kituo na idara.
- Kujulisha wenzako juu ya maendeleo kwa sababu za kushirikiana.
- Kujulisha wakubwa juu ya uamuzi na maendeleo ya ofisi, kituo au idara.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Monitoring - Kufuatilia

- Tambua dalili za maendeleo
- Fuatilia utaratibu
- Pima maendeleo kulingana na mipango na makadirio.
- Anzisha njia huru za habari
- Tembelea pahali pa kazi.
- Ongeza mazungumzo hadharani.
- Kutana na watu.
- Angalia kazi moja kwa moja.
- Uliza maswali ya wazi (dhabiri)

-Shawishi repoti za shida na makosa

- Ongoza mikutano ya kuangalia maendeleo ya kazi
- Mikutano kuangalia watu wamejifunza nini.

-Jifunze kutoka kwa mapya na makosa.

VOCABULARY	-	**MSAMIATI**
Hadharani	-	Open / direct
Jukumu	-	Task / Responsibility
Ufahamu	-	Comprehension
Fuatilia	-	Monitor
Kiitikio	-	Compliance
Kulingana	-	To compare
Chunguza	-	Check / Investigate
Tambua	-	Identify
Uhusiano	-	Relationship
Kati ya	-	Among
Wenzako	-	Collegues (Your)
Uamuzi	-	Decision
Kutatua	-	Solve / deal
Utaratibu	-	Procedure
Shawishi	-	Encourage
Mapya	-	New / Surprises
Makadirio	-	Budget
Onyesha	-	Show
Msaidizi	-	Assistant
Kiwango	-	Level / step
Rekebisha	-	Correct / give feedback

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Sheria	-	Law / instructions
Ilaani	-	Notice / Restriction
Marupurupu	-	Incentives
Nafasi	-	Opportunity / Chance
Kituo	-	Unit / Station
Idara	-	Department
Kushirikiana	-	Co-ordinate / cooperate
Pima	-	Measure
Makosa	-	Mistakes

EXERCISE - MAZOEZI:

1. Andika insha juu ya kiongozi mzuri.
2. Tafsiri sentensi hizi.
   - ask quetions about:
   - monitor the work
   - plan meetings early
   - give tasks and solve problems
   - how do you plan your work well

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

KUJENGA TANGI LA MAJI - TO CONTRUCT A WATER TANK

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE

PCV : Hamjambo.	**PCV**: Hallo
Kikundi: Hatujambo.	**Group:** We are fine.
PCV : Leo ningependa kuongea juu ya kujenga tangi la maji. Unahitaji, simiti, waya ya kuku, wheelbarrow, karatasi ya nylon, mabati, majembe nyundo, kichungi, karai, ngazi, mwiko wa kutandaza na mwiko wa mwashi.	**PCV:** Today I would like to talk about constructing a Wanter Tank. ou need cement, chicken wire, wheel burrow, polthene paper, sheets, hoes, hammers, sievers basin, ladder, steel float and builders level.
Kikundi: Baada ya kupata vifaa hivi vyote utafanya nini?	**Group**: After getting all these tools, wwhat will you do?
PCV:**Siku ya Kwanza - The First Day:** Pima tangi kiasi unachotaka. Chimba msingi, kata BRC ya sakafu.	**PCV**: **The First Day**: Measure the tank. Dig the foundation, cut the BRC slab.
Siku ya Tatu - The Third Day: Mwaga mawe kwenye msingi na piga piga kabisa. Baadaye, mwaga kokoto na kuweka mfereji. Sasa mwaga kokoto mara ya pili na wacha nafasi kando ya tanki. Weka BRC ya ukuta katika BRC ya sakafu na funga pamoja ukitumia waya ya kushikanisha (binding wire). Funika BRC ya paa na waya ya kuku.	**The Third Day:** Put stones on the foundation and level the stones completely. Later put in ballast and then the Water Piper. Put the ballast again and leave space near the tank. Put the wall BRC Slab on the floor and tie them together using a binding wire. Cover the roof BRC using a chicken wire.
Kikundi: Unahitaji kumwagilia maji?	**Group**: Do you need to pour water on it?
PCV :Ndiyo katika siku ya tatu unahitajikumwagilia maji, BRC ya ukuta kwa waya ya kuku na waya ya kuunganisha. Funga kwa karatasi ya nylon upande wa nje ya BRC ya ukuta. Tandaza upande wa ndani wa ukuta. Funika ukuta na makaratasi mpaka kesho.	**PCV**: Yes, on the third, you need to pour water on the wall BRC, on the chicken wire and the binding wire. Tie the outside part of the BRC wall using a polythene paper. spread the inside part of the wall. Cover the wall with paper until the next day.
Kikundi: Utatoa makaratasi haya lini?	**Group**: When will you remove these papers?
PCV :Siku inayofuata, toa makaratasi na mwagilia maji ukuta na sakafu. Tandaza upande wa ndani wa ukuta mara ya pili.	**PCV:** The following day, remove the papers and pour water on the wall and the floor. Spread the inside part of the wall again.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Siku ya Tano - The Fifth Day: Toa makaratasi na mwagilia maji. Tandaza mara ya tatu upande wa nje. Funga na makaratasi halafu wacha mpaka kesho.	**The Fifth Day**: Remove the papers and pour water then spread the outside part for the third time. Cover with papers and leave it until the following day.
Siku ya Sita - The Sixth Day: Toa makaratasi na mwagilia maji kwa ukuta na sakafu. Tandaza vizuri upande wa nje wa ukuta. Mwagilia maji kwa ukuta na sakafu na tandaza upande wa ndani wa ukuta na sakafu halafu weka nilo.	**The Sixth Day:** Remove the papers and pour water on the wall, and the floor. Spread the outside part of the wall well pour water on the wall and floor and then spread the inside part of the wall then put into.
Kikundi:Unahitaji kufunga BRC ya ukuta?	**Group:** Do you need to tie the wall BRC?
PCV :Mwagilia ukuta na sakafu maji kwanza, halafu funga BRC ya paa kwa ukuta. Tandaza paa na wacha shimo ndogo (manhole) halafu funika kwa makaratasi ya nylon mpaka siku itakayofuata.	**PCV:** Pour water on the wall and floor first and then tie the roof BRC to the wall. Spread the roof and leave a manhole then cover it with polythene paper until the following day.
Siku ya Saba - The Seventh Day: Toa makaratasi na mwagilia maji na tandaza vizuri juu ya paa na funika mpaka siku itakayofuata. Kwa siku tatu toa makaratasi na mwagilia maji.	**The Seventh Day:** Remove the papers and pour water, spread the roof well and then cover it until the following day. For three days, remove the papers and pour water.
Kikundi:Sasa tangi limeisha?, Utatunza tangi vipi?	**Group**: Is the tank complete now? how will you take care of the tank?
PCV :Safisha tangi kabla ya mvua kunyesha kila wakati. Ikiwa na shimo, tengeneza mara moja.	**PCV:** Clean the tank before the rains every time. If it has a hole repair at once.
Kikundi:Ahsante sana PCV, kesho tutaanza kujenga tangi.	**Group:** Thank you very much, tomorrow we will start constructing a water tank.
PCV :Kwaheri tutaonana	**PCV**: Good-bye see you.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

REVISED WATER

LANGUAGE TECHNICAL COMPETENCIES

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: **INTRODUCTION**

COMPETENCY: **TO TELL WHAT PEACE CORPS IS AND WHAT THEY DO:**

PCV Scott visited the Masii Village and introduced himself to them. Explain what P.C. is and talked about his work as a Water and Sanitation Volunteer.

PCV Scott alitembelea Kijiji cha Masii na akajijulisha kwao. Alieleza Peace Coprs ni nini na akazungumza juu ya kazi yake kama mjitoleaji wa maji na usafi.

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE:

PCV: Hamjambo mabibi na mabwana.?	**PCV:** Hallo ladies and gentlemen
Kikundi: Hatujambo	**Kikundi:** Hallo.
PCV: Jina langu ni Scott na ninatoka nchi ya Amerika lakini sasa ninakaa hapa.	**PCV :** My name is Scott and I come from America, but now I stay here.
Mama I: Unafanya kazi na shirika gani?	**Mama 1:** What organization do you work with?
PCV: Ninafanya kazi na shirika la Peace Corps.	**PCV:** I work with the Organization of Peace Corps
Baba: Shirika la Peace Corps linafanya kazi gani?	**Baba:** What does Peace Corps Organization do?
PCV: Linafanya kazi kama kufundisha shule, kazi ya maji na usafi, kazi ya kilimo mseto na kazi ya biashara ndogo.	**PCV:** It does work like teaching in schools., work of Water and Sanitation, Agroforestry and Small Business.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mwenyekiti: Utafanya kazi hizo zote?.	**Mwenyekiti:** Are you going to do all these things.
PCV: Hapana, mimi ni mshauri wa maji na usafi.	**PCV:** No I am an advisor of Water and Sanitation.
Mama: Maji na usafi ni nini?	**Mama:** What is Water and Sanitation?
PCV: Nitafundisha juu ya afya bora, maji bora kwa kunywa, kutumia choo vizuri na umuhimu wa usafi nyumbani.	**PCV:** I teach about better health, better water for drinking, how to use toilets well and the importance of cleanliness in a home.
Mwenyekiti: Oh, asante sana, tumefurahi kwa kukujua.	**Mwenyekiti:** Thank you very much we are happy to know you.
PCV: Asante pia.	Thank you too.

ZOEZI LA KWANZA - EXERCISE ONE

Tafsiri Sentensi hizi - Translate these sentences:

1. I am a PCV.
2. He / she is Water and Sanitation Advisor
3. I teach the community about health..
4. Which organization do you work for?
5. Peace Corps Volunteers work as Water and Sanitation Advisors, Agroforesters and Small Buiness Advisors.

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE TWO

Jibu Maswali haya - answer these questions:

1. Scott anatoka nchi gani?
2. Scott anafanya kazi na shirika gani?
3. Shirika la Peace Corps linafanya kazi gani?
4. Mshauri wa maji wa usafi anafanya kazi gani?

Cultural Note:
Once you visit groups they will prepare a meal for everyone to welcome you. It is not good to refuse food offer since its done for you even if you are not feeling well just ask for a separate plate and eat just a little.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: **WATER TREATMENT**

COMPETENCY: **TEACH HOW TO TREAT SMALL QUANTITES OF WATER FOR HOME USE.**

PCV: Hamjambo mabibi na Mabwana?	**PCV:** Halo ladies & gentlemen?
Mama Kijiji: Hatujambo	**Mama Kijiji:** Halo.
PCV: Leo ningependa kuzungumza na nyinyi juu ya maji ambayo mnatumia nyumbani.	**PCV:** Today I'd like to talk to you about the water you use at home.
Mama Kijiji: Oh asante sana na karibu.	**Mama Kijiji:** Oh thank you and welcome.
PCV: Je nyinyi mnachota maji ambayo mnatumia wapi?	**PCV:** Well where do you fetch water you use?
Mama: Sisi tunachota maji katika bwawa na kisima.	**Mama:** We fetch from a dam and a well.
PCV: Hayo maji ambayo mnatumia ni machafu, na yanaweza kuleta magonjwa kama Kipindu pindu na kichocho.	**PCV:** That water you use is dirty and can bring diseases like cholera and bilharzia.
Mzee I: Sasa tutafanya nini?	**Mzee:** Now what do we do?
PCV: Rahisi, mnahitaji kusafisha maji kabla ya kutumia.	**PCV:** Simple you need to treat water before using.
Mama: Tutasafisha maji vipi?	**Mama:** How do we treat water?
PCV: Leo nitasema juu ya njia moja ambayo ni rahisi na muhimu sana. Njia hii ni kuchemsha maji. Kesho tutazungumza zaidi juu ya njia zingine.	**PCV:** Today I'll talk about one method which is easy and very important. This method is boiling. Tomorrow we will talk more about methods.
Mzee 2: Asante tungependa kujifunza zaidi.	**Mzee 2:** Thanks. We'd like to learn more.
PCV: Hamjambo tena?	**PCV:** Halo ladies again.
Kijiji: Hatujambo. Karibu.	**Kijiji:** Halo and welcome.
PCV: Leo tutaendelea kuzungumza juu ya njia zingine za kusafisha maji. Njia zingine ni kama kuchuja na kutia dawa.	**PCV:** Today we shall continue talking about other ways of treating water. Other ways are like filtering and putting chemicals.
Mama 2: Unatumia nini kuchuja maji?	**Mama 2**: What do you use to filter the water?
PCV: Unachuja kwa kitambaa safi. Pia unaweza kutumia mchanga na makaa.	**PCV:** You filter it using a clean cloth. You can also use sand and charcoal.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mzee 3: Unatua dawa gani na vipi? **PCV:** Dawa hii inaitwa Aluminium Sulphate (alum) na unaweka ndani ya maji halafu unangoja kwa muda mfupi. **Mama 2:** Kuna njia nyingine? **PCV:** Hizi ni njia tatu muhimu; na pia jaribu kuteka maji pahali si pachafu na hakuna choo karibu. **Mzee 2:** Asante sana bwana. Tutajaribu kufuata mafuzo yako ili kuzuia magonjwa ya maji.	**Mzee 3**: Which chemical do you put and how? **PCV:** This chemical is called Aluminum sulfate (alum), and you put it in water and then you wait for a short duration. **Mama 2**: Is there another way? **PCV:** These are the three major ways and also to fetch water where there is no dirt and latrine near. **Mzee 2:** Thank you very. We'll try to follow your teachings. so as to prevent water diseases.

MA

Umoja	**Wingi**	**Kiingereza**
dawa	madawa	medicine / chemical
-	maji	water
kaa	makaa	charcoal
bwawa	mabwawa	dams
	magonjwa	diseases
	matumizi	usage

KI / VI

kisima	visima	well
kitambaa	vitambaa	cloth
kipindupindu	-	cholera
kichocho	-	bilharzia

M/MI

mchanga	-	soil

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Adjectives

muhimu	-	important

VERB

Kuchemsha - to boil
Kuchota - to fetch
Kuteka - to fetch, catc h
Kusafisha - to clean, treat
Kuchuja - to filter
Kutia - to put in
Kutumia - to use

EXERCISE A:

Tumia maneno haya katika sentensi (use these words in sentences)

a) Bwawa
b) Kisima
c) Magonjwa
d) Kichocho
e) Safisha
f) Tia dawa
g) Kuchuja
h) Chafu

EXERCISE B:

Change these sentences into plural (Andika sentensi hizi katika wingi)

a) Ninchota maji katika bwawa.
b) Dada yangu anachemsha maji kabla ya kunywa
c) Nilisafisha maji kwa dawa ya Alum.
d) Atachuja maji kwwa kitambaa.
e) Alipata ugonjwa wa kichocho.
f) Mtoto alipata ugonjwa wa kipindupindu.

EXERCISE C:

Jibu maswali haya kutoka kwa mazungumzo (Answer these questions from the dialogue)

a) Watu wa kijiji wanapata maji wapi?
b) Ni muhimu kusafisha maji? kwa nini?
c) Taja njia tatu za kusafisha maji.
d) Maji machafu yanaleta magonjwa gani?
e) Unasafisha maji kwa dawa gani?
f) Unachuja maji kwa kutumia nini?

Cultural note:

Culturall it is the womens duty to fetch water for their families.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: **SOURCES OF WATER:**

COMP : **DESCRIBE ADVANTAGES & DISADVANTAGES OF DIFFERENT SOURCES OF WATER.**

MAZUNGUMZO DIALOGUE:
Afisa wa afya na Wanakijiji.

Afisa :Hamjambo nyote?	**Afisa:** HaLlo all of you.
Wanakijiji: Hatujambo.	**Wana Kijiji:** HaLlo
Afisa : Mimi ni afisa wa afya hapa ningependa kujua shida zenu ya afya.	**Afisa:** I am the Health Officer here and I would like to know your health problems.
Mwanakijiji :Tumekuwa na shida ya kuhara na watu wengi wamekufa.	**Mwana Kijiji:** We have had problems of diarrhea and many people have died.
Mama I:Tumelaaniwa!.	**Mama I:** We have been cursed!
Mzee I: Labda ni ukosefu wa maji safi. Hapa hakuna maji.	**Mzee I:** May be its lack of clean water, there'nt water.
Afisa jibu nzuri. Mnapata maji yenu kutoka wapi?	**Afisa:** Good answer where do you get your water from.
Mzee 2 : Tunapata mtoni na visimani.	**Mzee 2:** We get water from the river and well.
Mzee 3: Sisi hutega kwa mapaa ya nyumba, wakati wa mvua.	**Mzee 3:** We trap water from our house roofs during the rains.
Afisa: Pia unaweza kupata maji kutoka kwa mabwawa, chemu, chemu, na miamba. Kwa kawaida maji ya mito, visima hupati uchafu kwa urahizi kwa hivyo ni muhimu kuchemsha maji yote kabla ya kunywa.	**Afisa:** We can also get water from dams, springs and rocks. Water from rivers and wells get dirty easily, therefore it is important to boil all your water before drinking.
Mzee :Asante bwana afisa.	**Mzee:** Thank you officer.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI:

M /WA

Umoja	**Vocabulary**	**Kiingereza**
Afisa wa afya	Afisa	Officer

N

Umoja	**Vocabulary**	**Kiingereza**
Shida Chemichemi	Shida Chemcihemi	Problems Spring

U

Umoja	**Vocabulary**	**Kiingereza**
Ukosefu		Lack of

KI / VI

Umoja	**Vocabulary**	**Kiingereza**
Kisima		

M /MI

Umoja	**Vocabulary**	**Kiingereza**
Mto Mwamba	mito miamba	river(s) rock(s)

MA

Umoja	**Vocabulary**	**Kiingereza**
Paa bwawa	mapaa mabwawa	roof(s) dam(s)

VERBS	

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Kutumia	to use
Kuchemsha	to boil
Kutega Kulaaniwa	to fetch / catch/ trap
Kuhara	to be cursed
Kufa	to diarhea
	to die

ADVERB:

Urahisi - easily
Kwa kawaida - usually

EXERCISE 1

1. Tengeneza sentensi ukitumia "kwa kawaida" pamoja na maneno yaliyo ndani ya vifungo. "
Make sentences using "kwa kawaida" with the words in brackets.

   Kwa mfano - Example: Kwa kawaida wao husema wamelaaniwa.

   (Mimi, wewe, yeye, sisi, nyinyi, wao) huwa shuleni, huchemsha maji ya kunywa , hutumia, hutega maji, husema wamelaaniwa).

2. Andika sentensi ukitumia vitendo hivi. Write sentences using these verbs.
Kucemsha, kulaaniwa, kutega, kusababishwa, yasiyofaa.

3. Sema njia tofauti za kutega maji.

ZOEZI A - EXERCISE A:

1) Tengeneza sentensi ukitumia "Kwa Kawaida" pamoja na maneno yaliyo ndani ya vifungo.
Make sentences using "Kwa Kawaida" with the words in brackets.
Kwa mfano - Example: Kwa kawaida wao husema wamelaaniwa.

(mimi, wewe, yeye, sisi, nyinyi, wao) (huja shuleni, huchemsha maji ya kunywa, hutumia, hutega maji, husema wamelaaniwa)

2) Andika sentensi ukitumia vitendo hivi.
Write sentences using these verbs:
Kuchemsha, kulaaniwa, kutega, kusababishwa, yasiyofaa.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: - RAIN WATER HARVESTING.

COMP : - EXPLAIN WAYS OF HARVESTING AND STORING WATER.

PCV Scott visited Ikolomani Village and talked about several ways of harvesting rain water and also how to store the water in a sanitary manner.

PPCV Scott alitembelea Kijiji cha Ikolomani na akazungumza juu ya njia tofauti za kutega maji ya mvua na pia jinsi ya kuhifadhi maji hayo katika hali ya usafi.

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE:

(Mazungumzo kati ya Scott (PCV) na Mutiso)

Scott :Hujambo mzee Mutiso.	**Scott:** Hallo mzee Mutiso.
Mutiso:Sijambo bwana Scott, habari gani?	**Mutiso:** Hallo Scott, how are you?
Scott : Si mbaya mzee. Unaweza kunisaidia na maji?	**Scott:** Not bad mzee. Can you help me with some water?
Mutiso: Hakuna shida ingawa nina mitungi miwili tu.	**Mutiso**: No problem although I have only 2 jerricans.
Scott :Kwa nini na ni kipindi cha mvua?	**Scott:** Why and its rainy season?
Mutiso: Sina vitu vya kutosha vya kuweka maji..	**Mutiso:** I don't have enough storage containers.
Scott :Ninafikiri unahitaji kujenga tanki la maji.	**Scott:** I think you need to construct a water tank.
Mutiso:Sina pesa bwana na simiti ni ghali sana.	**Mutiso:** I don't have water bwana and cement is expensive.
Scott : Unaweza kununua pipa?	**Scott:** Ok can you buy a drum?
Mutiso: Ndiyo .	**Mutiso**: Yes.
Scott :Pia mzee kuna njia zingine tofauti za kutega maji kama kwa miamba. Kuchimba bwawa au hata kutoka kwa changarawe.	**Scott:** Also mzee there are various ways of harvesting water like from rocks, digging dams or even earth dams?
Mutiso: Asante kwa mawaidha yako.	**Mutiso:** Thanks for your advice.
Scott :Ukifuata mawaidha hayo hutakuwa na shida ya maji tena.	**Scott:** If you follow this advice, you will not have water problem again.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

M / MI

Mtungi Mwamba	mitungi miamba	jericcans

N

Tanki Simiti Kokoto Changarawe Njia	Tanki Simiti Kokoto Changarawe Njia	Tank Cement Ballast Sand Ways, method

MA

Pipa - Bwawa	Mapipa Mawaidha Mabwawa

KI/VI

Kipindi	Vipindi	Season, period

VERBS:	
Kutega maji	to harvest water
kufuata	to follow
Kuhitaji	to need
Kuchimba	to dig
Kunisaidia	to help me
Kujenga	build construct
Kufikiri	to think
ADVERB:	
Ingawa	Even though / hough
Basi	okay
Tofauti	different

ADJECTIVE.

Ghali	expensive

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI 1 - EXERCISE 1

Jibu maswali haya.

1. PCV Scott alizungumza na nani?
2. Scott alitaka msaada gani?
3. Mutiso alikuwa na mitungi mingapi ya maji?
4. Kwa nini Mutiso hakuwa na maji mengi?

ZOEZI 2 - EXERCISE 2:

1. Andika njia tatu za kuhifadhi maji ya mvua.
2. Andika njia mbili za kutega maji ya mvua.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

KUJENGA TANGI LA MAJI - TO CONTRUCT A WATER TANK
MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE

PCV : Hamjambo?.	**PCV**: Hallo
Kikundi: Hatujambo.	**Group:** We are fine.
PCV : Leo ningependa kuongea juu ya kujenga tangi la maji. Unahitaji, simiti, waya ya kuku, wheelbarrow, karatasi ya nylon, mabati, majembe, nyundo, kichungi, karai, ngazi, mwiko wa kutandaza na mwiko wa mwashi.	**PCV:** Today I would like to talk about constructing a Wanter Tank. You need cement, chicken wire, wheel burrow, polythene paper, sheets, hoes, hammers, sievers, basin, ladder, steel float and builders level.
Kikundi: Baada ya kupata vifaa hivi vyote utafanya nini?	**Group**: After getting all these tools, what will you do?
PCV:**Siku ya Kwanza - The First Day:** Pima tangi kiasi unachotaka. Chimba msingi, kata BRC ya sakafu.	**PCV**: **The First Day**: Measure the tank. Dig the foundation, cut the BRC slab.
Siku ya Tatu - The Third Day: Mwaga mawe kwenye msingi na piga piga kabisa. Baadaye, mwaga kokoto na kuweka mfereji. Sasa mwaga kokoto mara ya pili na wacha nafasi kando ya tanki. Weka BRC ya ukuta katika BRC ya sakafu na funga pamoja ukitumia waya ya kushikanisha (binding wire). Funika BRC ya paa na waya ya kuku.	**The Third Day:** Put stones on the foundation and level the stones completely. Later put in ballast and then the Water Piper. Put the ballast again and leave space near the tank. Put the wall BRC Slab on the floor and tie them together using a binding wire. Cover the roof BRC using a chicken wire.
Kikundi: Unahitaji kumwagilia maji?	**Group**: Do you need to pour water on it?
PCV :Ndiyo katika siku ya tatu unahitaji kumwagilia maji BRC ya ukuta kwa waya ya kuku na waya ya kuunganisha. Funga kwa karatasi ya nylon upande wa nje ya BRC ya ukuta. Tandaza upande wa ndani wa ukuta. Funika ukuta na makaratasi mpaka kesho.	**PCV**: Yes, on the third, you need to pour water on the wall BRC, on the chicken wire and the binding wire. Tie the outside part of the BRC wall using a polythene paper. spread the inside part of the wall. Cover the wall with paper until the next day.
Kikundi: Utatoa makaratasi haya lini?	**Group**: When will you remove these papers?
PCV :Siku inayofuata, toa makaratasi na mwagilia maji ukuta na sakafu. Tandaza upande wa ndani wa ukuta mara ya pili.	**PCV:** The following day, remove the papers and pour water on the wall and on the floor. Spread the inside part of the wall again.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Siku ya Tano - The Fifth Day: Toa makaratasi na mwagilia maji. Tandaza mara ya tatu upande wa nje. Funga na makaratasi halafu wacha mpaka kesho.	**The Fifth Day**: Remove the papers and pour water, then spread the outside part for the third time. Cover with papers and leave it until the following day.
Siku ya Sita - The Sixth Day: Toa makaratasi na mwagilia maji kwa ukuta na sakafu. Tandaza vizuri upande wa nje wa ukuta. Mwagilia maji kwa ukuta na sakafu na tandaza upande wa ndani wa ukuta na sakafu halafu weka nilo.	**The Sixth Day:** Remove the papers and pour water on the wall, and the floor. Spread the outside part of the wall well, pour water on the wall and floor and then spread the inside part of the wall then put Niro.
Kikundi:Unahitaji kufunga BRC ya ukuta?	**Group:** Do you need to tie the wall BRC?
PCV :Mwagilia ukuta na sakafu maji kwanza, halafu funga BRC ya paa kwa ukuta. Tandaza paa na wacha shimo ndogo (manhole) halafu funika kwa makaratasi ya nylon mpaka siku itakayofuata.	**PCV:** Pour water on the wall and floor first and then tie the roof BRC to the wall. Spread the roof and leave a manhole then cover it with polythene paper until the following day.
Siku ya Saba - The Seventh Day: Toa makaratasi na mwagilia maji na tandaza vizuri juu ya paa na funika mpaka siku itakayofuata. Kwa siku tatu toa makaratasi na mwagilia maji.	**The Seventh Day:** Remove the papers and pour water, spread the roof well and then cover it until the following day. For three days, remove the papers and pour water.
Kikundi:Sasa tangi limeisha?, Utatunza tangi vipi?	**Group**: Is the tank complete now? how will you take care of the tank?
PCV :Safisha tangi kabla ya mvua kunyesha kila wakati. Ikiwa na shimo, tengeneza mara moja.	**PCV:** Clean the tank before the rains every time. If it has a hole repair at once.
Kikundi:Ahsante sana PCV, kesho tutaanza kujenga tangi.	**Group:** Thank you very much, tomorrow we will start constructing a water tank.
PCV :Kwaheri tutaonana	**PCV**: Good-bye see you.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI - VOCABULARY

N

Umoja	Wingi	Kiingereza
Nyundo	Nundo	Hammer
Sakafu	Sakafu	Floor
Wwaya	Waya	Wire
Kokoto	Kokoto	Ballast
Simiti	Simiti	Cement
Karai	Karai	Basin

MA

Umoja	Wingi	Kiingereza
Shimo	Mashimo	Hole(s)
Paa	Mapaa	roof(s)
Bati	Mabati	iron sheet(s)
Jembe	Majembe	hoe
Tanki	Matanki	tank(s)

KI / VI

Umoja	Wingi	Kiingereza
Kichungi	Vichungi	Sieve, strainer

VERBS	
Kuongea	to talk
Kutandaza	spread
Kumwaga	to pour
Mwagilia	pour on, to
Kushikanisha	to join
Kujenga	to build
Kuchimba	to dig

MAZOEZI - EXERCISES

Jibu maswali haya - Answer these questions

1. Unahitaji vifaa (tools) gani kujenga tanki la maji?
2. Unajenga tanki la maji kwa siku ngapi?
3. Siku ya tatu unafanya nini?
4. Siku ya saba unafanya nini?
5. Unahitaji kutunza tanki lako vipi?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI II - EXERCISE II

Tafsiri sentensi hizi - Translate these sentences

1. Clean the tank always
2. Dig the foundation
3. Pour ballast
4. Build the wall
5. Cover the tank with nylon paper.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: **VIP LATRINE CONSTRUCTION**

COMPTENCY **:INTRODUCE COMMUNITY MEMBERS TO VIP LATRINE CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES AND ITS ADVANTAGES,**

PCV Brian visited the Chairperson of Umoja Group and explained the importance of VIP Latrine and how to construct it.

PCV Brian alitembelea Mwenye kiti wa Kikundi cha Umoja na kumweleza umuhimu wa choo cha kisasa.

Dialogue - Mazungumzo

PCV Brian: Halo bwana?.	**Brian:** Halo bwana.
Mwenyekiti: Sijambo ndugu karibu nyumbani.	**Mwenyekiti:** Halo brother - welcome home.
Brian: Mlisema mngependa kujua jinsi ya kujenga choo cha kisasa. Mngetaka kuanza lini?	**Brian:** You said you would like to know how to construct a VIP latrine. When would you like to start.
Mwenyekiti: Wakati wowote kwa sababu tuna pesa na vifaa.	**Mwenyekiti:** Any time because we have money and materials.
Brian: Ninafanya kazi ya maji na usafi na kwa hivyo ninaweza kuwasaidia.	**Brian:** I do work of Water & Sanitation and so I can help you.
Mwenyekiti: Tunahitaji kufanya nini?	**Mwenyekiti:** What do we need to do?
Brian: Kwanza ni muhimu kutafuta pahali ambapo ni mbali na maji.	**Brian**: First it is important to look for a place which is far from a water source
Mwenyekiti: Kwa nini mbali na maji?	**Mwenyekiti:** Why far from a water source?
Brian: Kwa sababu ukijenga choo karibu na maji utapata magonjwa ya maji.	**Brian:** Because if you build near a water source you will get water borne diseases.
Mwenyekiti: Baadaye nitafanya nini?	**Mwenyekiti:** Next I will do what?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Brian: Sasa utachimba shimo ambalo utaweka sakafu (slab) **Mwenyekiti:** Halafu.. **Brian:** Utahitaji kokoto, simiti, mchanga na waya. **Mwenyekiti**: Tutahitaji kunyunyizia jiwe la sakafu maji? **Brian:** Bila shaka, mara kwa mara. Pia tutatengeneza shimo na tutaweka pipe ya kutoa harufu nje. Baadaye tutatengeneza ukuta na paa. **Mwenyekiti:** Asante sana kwa maelezo yako nitakualika kwa mafunzo zaidi. **Brian**: Sawa. Nitafurahi kwaheri.	**Brian:** Now you will dig a hoe which you'll place the slab. **Mwenyekiti:** Then **Brian:** You'll need ballast, cement sand and wire. **Mwenyekiti:** Shall we need to cure the slab? **Brian:** Of course once in a while. Also we'll make a hole and put the ventilation pipe, to remove the smell. Later we'll build the wall and the roof (super structure). **Mwenyekiti**: Thank you for your explanation. I'll invite you for more teachings. **Brian**: Okay. I'll be happy chao!

MSAMIATI **VOCABULARY**

KI / VI

Choo	Vyoo	latrine
Kifaa	Vifaa	materials (tools)
Choo cha kisasa	Vyoo vya kisasa	modern choo (V.I.P)

N

Umoja	**Wingi**	**Kiingereza**
Sakafu	sakafu	floor
Harufu	harufu	smell

MA

Umoja	**Wingi**	**Kiingereza**
Paa	Mapaa	Roofs
Shimo	Mashimo	Hole
Jiwe	Mawe	Stone

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

VERBS

Kujenga	to construct, build
Kuhitaji	to need
Kuchimba	to dig
Kutengeza	to make
ADJECTIVES:	
Safi	Clean
ADVERBS:	
Tayari	Ready
Lazima	must
Muhimu	important

MAZOEZI - EXERCISE 1

Jibu Maswali haya - Answer this questions

1. Brian ni nani?
2. Anafanya kazi gani?
3. Brian alitembelea nani?
4. Ukitaka kujenga choo unahitaji vifaa gani?
5. Eleza jinsi ya kujenga choo cha kisasa.
6. Kuna tofauti gani kati ya choo cha kawaida na choo cha kisasa?

ZOEZI II - EXERCISE II

Tafsiri sentensi hizi - Translate these sentences:

1. Constructing a VIP Latrine
2. VIP Latrine projects.
3. Construction materials
4. Dig trench
5. Dig pit
6. Construct roof and wall.
7. Wash toilet regularly.
8. Close the door of the latrine.

Cultural Note:

In some ethnic groups using of toilets is discouraged. Instead people prefer going to the bushes or their farms as this is believed to improve the soil fertility and is also good luck.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: **CONSTRUCTION TOOLS:**

COMPETENCY: **IDENTIFY TOOLS USED IN GENERAL CONSTRUCTION**

PCV Scott: Hujambo bwana??	**PCV Scott::** Hallo!
Jim: Sijambo, karibu sana..	**Jim:** Halo, welcome
PCV Scott: Asante sana. Leo ningependa kuzungumza na wewe juu ya vifaa vya kujenga, kwa mfano ukitaka kuchimba shimo unahitaji nini?	**PCV Scott:** Thank you very much, today I would like to talk to you about building materials for example if you want to dig a hole, what do you need?
Jim : Ninafikiri utahitaji vifaa kama jembe, uma, sururu na kijiko kikubwa.	**Jim:** I think you need materials like hoe, fork, pick-axe and a shovel.
PCV Scott: Ndiyo, lakini kabla ya kuchimba ni lazima kufanya nini?	**PCV Scott:** Yes but before digging, you need to do what?
Jim : Kwanza ni vizuri kufyeka, kupima halafu kuweka vikingi vya msingi.	**Jim:** First it's good to slash, measure and then put in foundation pegs.
PCV Scott: Halafu utafanya nini?	**PCV Scott:** next?
Jim : Halafu utachanganya simiti, maji na mchanga na kukoroga. Baada ya kukoroga utatia mchanganyiko huu ndani ya karai halafu utaweka katika msingi.	**Jim:** Then you will mix cement, water and sand after which you stir. After stirring you will put this mixture in the basin and then you put it on the foundation.
PCV Scott: Kweli wewe ni fundi wa maji. Sasa tunaweza kwenda kujenga tanki dogo la maji.	**PCV Scott**: You are a real water technician. We can now go and build a small water tank.
Jim : Haya twende sasa.	**Jim:** O.k. lets go now.

VOCABULARIES

KI - VI

Singular	**Plural**
Kifaa	Vifaa (materials)
Kijiko	Vijiko (shovel / spoons)
Kikingi	Vikingi (pegs)

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

M - MI

Singular	**Plural**
Mchanga	- (sand)
Msingi	Misingi (foundations)
Mchanganyiko	Michanganyiko (mixture)
N	
Simiti	Simiti (cement)
Karai	Karai (basin)
Sururu	Sururu (pick-axe)

VERBS

Kuzungumza (to talk)
Kujenga (to construct / build)
Kuchimba (to dig)
Kufyeka (to slash)
Kupima (to measure)
Kukoroga (to stir)
Kuchanganya (to mix)

MAZOEZI - EXERCISE

Tunga sentensi ukitumia maneno haya - Construct sentences using the following words:-

1. Jembe
2. Kijiko kikubwa
3. Fundi wa maji
4. Kujenga
5. Kufyeka
6. Kuchanganya
   Kukoroga

ZOEZI 2 - EXERCISE 2

Answer the following questions - jibu maswali haya.

1. Unatumia jembe kufanya nini?
2. Fundi wa maji hufanya nini?
3. Unahitaji vifaa gani kujenga tanki la maji?
4. Unatumia karai kufanya kazi gani?
5. Unahitaji nini kufyeka/?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

AIDS - UKIMWI

COMPETENCY: EDUCATE THE COMMUNITY ON DANGERS AND PREVENTION OF AIDS

ELIMISHA JAMII KUHUSU HATARI NA KUZUIA KUENEA KWA UKIMWI.

MAZUNGUMZO 1	DIALOGUE 1
PCV Pete alialika afisa wa afya katika kijiji cha Maisha Bora ili azungumzie juu ya ugonjwa wa ukimwi. Afisa alieleza zaidi jinsi mtu anaweza kupata ukimwi, madhara na jinsi ya kujikinga na ugonjwa huu. **PCV** - Hamjambo nyote? **WKJ** - Hatujambo bwana PCV. **PCV** - Leo tunafuraha sana kuwa na mgeni, yeye ni afisa wa afya. Atazungumza juu ya ugonjwa wa ukimwi. Karibu bwana afisa. **Bw. Afisa**: Asanteni, Hamjambo? **WKJ :** Hatujambo Bw. Afisa **Bw. Afisa:** Je ukimwi ni nini? **WK** - Ukimwi ni kurogwa au laana.	PCV Pete invited a Health Officer in the village of Maisha bora to talk about AIDS. The officer explained more on how one can get AIDS and ways of protecting oneself from the disease. **PCV** – Hallo every one? **Villagers**: - Hallo. **PCV** - Today we are happy to have a visitor, who is a Health Officer. He will talk about AIDs. "Welcome sir". **Officer:** - Thank you. How are you? **Villagers** - We are fine Officer. **Officer** - What is AIDS **Villagers** - AIDS is to be witched or curse.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Bw. Afisa: - Hamjambo mabibi na mabwana?	**Officer:** - Halo ladies & gentleman.
Mwanakijiji: - Hatujambo.	**Villagers -** Halo
Bw. Afisa: - Asante sana bw / bibi. Ukimwi ni ugonjwa ambao unaletwa na ukosefu wa kinga mwilini.	**Officer: -** Thank you very much ladies and gentlemen AIDS is a disease brought by lack of defense system in the body.
Wanakijiji - Vipi?	**Villagers -** How?
Bw. Afisa: - Unaletwa kwa kufanya mapenzi ya kimwili, kupokea damu hospitalini ambayo ina virusi vya ukimwi, kutumia kisu,, sindano au wembe ambao umetumiwa na mtu aliye na ukimwi. Pia mtoto anaweza kupata ukimwi kutoka kwa mama kabla ya kuzaliwa, ikiwa mama ana ukimwi	**Officer: -** AIDS is brought about through having sex with an infected person, infected blood tranfusion, using knives, injections, and razors used by people with AIDS, also an infected mother can passs AIDS to the unborn baby.
Mama – Bw. Afisa, mtu anaweza kupata ukimwi kutoka kwa wadudu, kama mbu?	**Mama 1 C**an one get infected through being bitten by insects such as mosquitoes?
Bw. Afisa: - Hapana. Pia huwezi kupata ukimwi kwa kusalamiana kwa mikono, kukumbatiana, kubusiana, kula pamoja, kuishi au kutumia blanketi moja na mtu aliye na ukimwi, au kutumia sahani, vijiko n.k. kwa pamoja.	**Officer: -** No, also you can't get AIDS through shaking of hands, hugging, kissing, sharing food, living together or sharing the same blankets or sharing utensils with an infected person.
Mzee: - Bwana Afisa, utajuaje una ukimwi?	**Mzee: -** Sir, how would you know you have AIDS?
Bw Afisa: - Swali nzuri sana, lakini kwa sababu hakuna wakati tutazungumza wikendi ijayo. Kwaherini.	**Officer:-** Very good question, but because there is no time we will talk about it next weekend. Bye.
PCV - Asanteni sana kwa kufika na kushiriki katika mkutano huu. Pia asante sana bw. afisa kwa kupata wakati wa kututembelea na karibu tena.	**PCV -** Thank you very much for coming and participating in this meeting. Also thank you Sir for finding time to visit us. Goodbye.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MAZUNGUMZO Dialogue 2

Bw Afisa: - Leo mtajibu maswali ya wiki jana. Kwanza nitaanza na dalili za ukimwi. Ukimwi ni ukosefu wa kinga mwilini mgonjwa huanza kuumwa na kichwa, huhara, kukohoa mara kwa mara au mfululizo, magonjwa ya ngozi, kukosa hamu ya kula, kuwa mgonjwa mara kwa mara na kukonda. **Mama 1: -** Kuna dawa, ya kutibu ukimwi? ----- **Bw. Afisa:** - La asha!. Hakuna dawa ya ukimwi duniani. **Mzee** - Mungu wangu! Tutafanyaje Bw. Afisa? **Bw. Afisa:** - Swali nzuri! mzee kuwa mwaminifu kwa mke au mme wako au kwa mpenzi wako. Pili usifanye mapenzi ya kimwili ovyo ovyo. Tatu, usifanye mapenzi kabisa; nne, ikiwa ni lazima kufanya mapenzi, basi tumia mpira (kondomu) tano, usitumie wembe, kisu au sindano moja na mtu mwingine, au ni lazima kuosha vitu hivi kwa kuchemsha. **Mwenyekiti -** Asante sana bwana Afisa tumejifunza mengi leo. Kwaheri.	**Officer:-** Today I'll answer last week's questions. First I'll talk about symptoms of AIDS. AID is lack of body defense system. The victim has headaches, diarrhea , coughing, itchy skin, lack of appetite, being sickly and loosing weight. **Mama 1:** - Is there cure for AIDS? **Officer:-** No, no cure on **earth.** **Mzee** - My God! What can we do bw. officer? **Officer:** Good, query mzee. Be faithful to your partner, don't practice unprotected sex, total abstinence, if you must have sex please use a condom, more over don't share razor blades, needles, injections with other people. You must boil / sterilize the above things before using them. **Chair:** - Thank you bw. officer. We've learnt alot today.

MISAMIATI

NOUNS

M - WA

Umoja (Singular)	Wingi (Plural)	Kiingereza
Afisa	Maafisa (Officers)	Officer
Mdudu	Wadudu (insects)	Insects
Mbu	Mbu (mosquitoes)	Mosquitoes
Mke	Wake (wives)	Wives

JI - MA

Umoja)Singular)	Wingi (Plural)	Kiingeeza

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

	Madhara Mapenzi	Damage Love

N

Umoja (Singular)	**Wingi (Plural)**	**Kiingereza**
Dalili (symptoms/ sign) Dunia (Earth) Kondomu (condom) Virusi (Virus)	Dalili Dunia Kondomu Virusi	symptoms World / Earth Condoms viruses

U

Umoja (Singular)	**Wingi (Plural)**	**Kiingereza**
Ukimwi (Aids) Ukosefu (Lack)	Ukimwi Ukosefu	AIDS lack

M - MI

Umoja (Singular)	**Wingi (Plural)**	**Kiingereza**
Mpira (condom)	Mpira	Condoms

ADVERBS

Kimwili Bodily
Ili - so that
Jinsi - the way / how
Kabisa - completely
Mfululizo - continuosly
Wakati - period
- aminifu - faithful
safi - clean

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

VERBS

Kupokea - to get
Kubusiana - to kiss one another
Kuhara - to diarrhea
Kukohoa - to cough
Kukonda - to slim
Kutibu - to treat
Kuchemsha - to boil
Kujifunza - to learn
Kuumwa - to ache
Kujifunza - to learn
Kuvutra - to smoke

ZOEZI LA 1 - EXERCISE 1

Write if it's true or false (Andika ikiwa ni kweli au si kweli)

Unaweza kupata ukimwi kwa:-
a) Kumbatiana
b) Kufanya mapenzi
c) Kubusiana
d) Kurogwa
e) Kusalimiana
f) Kutumia wembe pamoja
g) Kutumia choo moja
h) Kula pamoja
i) Kupokea damu
j) Kuumwa na mbu.

EXERCISE 2 - ZOEZI LA PILI:

Answer the followwing questions (jibu maswali haya)

a) Ukimwi ni nini?
b) Unaweza kupata ukimwwi vipi?
c) Andika dalili nne za ukimwi.
d) Ukimwi ni hatari, ukimwi unaua, tafanye nini?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

HADITHI - NARRATIVE:

MGONJWA WA UKIMWI	AIDS PATIENT
Mgonjwa wa ukimwi anahitaji kujitunza kwa kula chakula kizuri, asivute sigara, asinywe pombe, anahitaji kutumia kondomu wakati wote anapofanya mapenzi, anahitaji kupumzika, na kumwona daktari ikiwa hasikii vizuri. Pia Awe msafi.	An AIDS patient needs to take care of himself/ herself by eating well, not smoking or drinking alcohol. She / He needs to use a Condom whenever she/he is having sex, rest and see a doctor if he / she is not feeling well. Also he / she should observe cleanliness.

FACTS ABOUT AIDS	UKWELI KUHUSU UKIMWI
1. Ukimwi si kurogwa au laana 2. Ukimwi hauna tiba / dawa 3. Mtu yeyote anaweza kupata ukimwi 4. Ukimwi huua 5. Watu wengi hupata ukimwi kwa kufanya mapenzi.	1. AIDS is not witchcraft or curse 2. It has no cure. 3. Anyone can get AIDS. 4. AIDS kills. 5. Many people get AIDS through sex.

Cultural Note:

In some communities people believe in witchcraft hence AIDS is associated to witchcraft. More over other tribes believe in taboos and so believe AIDS is a curse from gods or ancestors. Some christians believe the earth is coming to an end, hence AIDS is a disease to punish people fom their sinfulness.

Note:

When doing a presenttion to a community you need to work with your counterpart on more culturally acceptable vocabulary like ume - penis (instead of man's private part) and uke - vagina (instead of woman's private part). The dictionary translation tends to be so direct and doesn't always agree with the common culturally appropriate terms.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MISAMIATI		-	VOCABULARIES
Afisa	(N)		Officer
Ukimwi	(N)		AIDS
Madhara	(N)		Damages
Afya	(N)		Health
Ugonjwa	(N)		Disease
Laana	(N)		Curse
Mapenzi	(N)		Love
Kimwili	(ADV)		Bodily
Wadudu	(N)		Insects
Mbu	(N)		Mosquito
Ili	(ADV)		So that
Jinsi	(ADV)		How
Dalili	(N)		Symptoms
Ukosefu	(N)		Lack
Duniani	(N)		On Earth
Mwaminifu	(ADJ)		Faithful
Kabisa	(ADV)		Completely
Mpira / Kondomu	(N)		Condom
Mfululizo	(ADV)		Continuously
Ngozi	(N)		Skin
Msafdi	(ADJ)		Clean
Kueleza	(V)		To explain
Kujikinga	(V)		To protect
Kurogwa	(V)		To witch
Kulaani	(V)		To Curse
Kumbatiana	(V)		To hug
Kushiriki	(V)		To participate
Kuzungumza	(V)		To talk
Kingo	(N)		Protection
Virusi	(N)		Virus
Kutumiwa	(V)		To be used
Kupokea	(V)		To get
Kubusiana	(V)		To kiss one another
Wakati	(ADV)		Period
Kuhara	(V)		To diarrhea
Kukohoa	(V)		To cough
Kukonda	(V)		To slim
Kutibu	(V)		Treat
Kuchemsha	(V)		To boil
Kujifunza	(V)		To learn
Kuumwa	(V)		To ache
Kujifunza	(V)		To take care
Kuvuta	(V)		To smoke

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: HOME IMPROVEMENT.

COMP: PERSONAL HYGIENE - EXPLAIN THE IMPORTANCE OF MAINTAINING PERSONAL HYGIENE TO THE COMMUNITY.

Eleza umuhimu wa kuhifadhi usafi kwa jamii!

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE

PCV - Hamjambo tena?	PCV - Hallo again?
Wana Kijiji: - Hatujambo	**Wana kijiji: -** We are well
PCV - Leo tutazungumza juu ya uhifadhi wa usafi kibinafsi. Je, mnajua nini juu ya usafi?	**PCV:-** Today we will talk about maintaining personal cleanliness. What do you know about cleanliness?
Bibi 1: - Kuoga mwili mara kwa mara.	**Bibi 1:-** Bathing regularly once in a while.
PCV - Asante sana. Nini ingine?	**PCV -** Thank you very much. What else?
B**wana 2: -** Kufua, kuvaa nguo safi, kukata kucha na kunawa mikono kabla na baada ya kula.	**Bw. 2:** - Washing clothes, wearing clean clothes, cutting nails and washing hands before and after meals.
PCV - Kweli kabisa. Pia ni lazima kunawa mikono baada ya kwenda choo na kuweka nywele fupi ili kuzuia wadudu kama chawa na kuosha uso kila siku ili kuzuia magonjwa ya macho.	**PCV -** True. Also it's a must to wash hands after going to a toilet, and washing your face everyday so as to prevent eye diseases.
Bibi 2: - Pia kupiga mswaki baada ya kula.	**Bibi 2: -** Also brushing teeth after eating.
PCV - Ndiyo. Asanteni sana. Kesho tutazungumza juu ya usafi nyumbani.	**PCV -** Yes! Thank you very much. Tomorrow we will talk about home hygiene

MSAMIATI **VOCABULARY**

M / WA

Umoja (Singular)	**Wingi (Plural)**
Mdudu	Wadudu

U

Umoja (Singular)	**Wingi (Plural)**
Ukucha Unywele	Kucha - Nails Nywele - Hair

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Verbs	
Kupiga mswaki Kunawa Kuhifadhi	To brush teeth To wash hands To maintain / preserve

Adjectives	
Kibinafsi Usafi Umuhimu	Personal Cleanliness Importance

EXERCISE 1.
ZOEZI LA KWANZA.

ANDIKA INSHA JUU YA USAFI WA KIBINAFSI. (WRITE A COMPOSITION ON PERSONAL HYGIENE)

EXERCISE 2:
ZOEZI LA PILI

Kanusha sentensi zifuatazo: **Negate the following sentenses:**

a) Nilipiga mwaki baada ya kula.
b) Ni lazima kuoga mara kwa mara.
c) Mimi huoga, kwa maji moto.
d) Ni lazima kunawa baada ya kwenda choo.
e) Tutafua nguo wikendi.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

HOME HYGIENE - USAFI NYUMBANI

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

PCV - Habari zenu?	**PCV** - How are you?
Kikundi - Nzuri bwana.	**Group** - Fine bwana.
PCV - Leo ningependa kuzungumza juu ya usafi nyumbani.	**PCV -** Today I'd like to talk about Home Hygiene.
Kikundi - Asante, karibu sana.	**Group -** Thank you and welcome.
PCV - Mnajua nini juu ya usafi nyumbani?	**PCV -** What do you know about home hygiene?
Jay - Ninajua unahitaji kufagia nyumba kila siku, kuchoma takataka na kufyeka nyasi.	**Jay -** I know you need to sweep the house daily, burn gabbage and slash the grass around the compound.
PCV - Oh, ni muhimu kuwa msafi nyumbani ili kuzuia magonjwa mengi.	PCV - Oh. it's important to be clean at home so as to prevent many deseases.
Mama 2: - Nimefanya hayo yote lakini watoto wanahara.	**Mama -** I've done all those things but my kids have diarrhea.
PCV - Labda ni chakula chafu. Unahitaji kuosha chakula kabla ya kupika, kufunika chakula unapopika pia, kupika chakula vizuri, na kuchemsha maji kabla ya kunywa.	**PCV -** Maybe its because the food is not clean. You need to wash food before cooking, cover it while cooking and cook it well. You also need to boil drinking water.
Mama 2: -Asante. Nitafuata mashauri yako.	**Mama** - Thanks, I'll follow your advice.
PCV - Je, mnajua nini juu ya kuishi na wanyama ndani ya nyumba?	**PCV -** Well, what do you know about living with animals inside the house.
Baba 1 - Kwani ni vibaya?	**Baba I -** Is it bad?!!
PCV: Ndiyo ikiwa wanyama wana wadudu, unaweza kupata magonjwa ya ngozi.	**PCV** - Yes, if the animals have bugs, you'll get skin diseases.
Mwenyekiti: Asante kwa maelezo yako.	**Chairman** - Thank for your explanation.
PCV: Asante pia. Wiki ijayo tutazungumza zaidi juu ya magonjwa ambayo huletwa na uchafu nyumbani.	**PCV** - Thank you too. Next week we'll talk more about diseases that are brought by dirt at home.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI **VOCABULARY**

N

Ngozi	Skin, Hydes
Takataka	Trash, Garbage

MA

Mazingira	Environment

VERBS	
Kuchemsha	To boil
Kufuata	to follow
Kuhara	to diarrhea
Kufyeka	to slash
Kufunika	cover
Kuosha	clean, wash
Kuchoma	sweep
Kufagia	to talk, convrse
Kuzungumza	

Adjectives	
Safi	Clean

Exercise 1:

Jibu Maswali haya - Answer this questions.
(From the Home Hygiene Passage)

1. Kwa usafi wa chakula tunahitaji kufanya nini?

2. Ikiwa unataka kuishi katika mazingira safi unahitaji kufanya nini?

3. Kwa nini si vizuri kuishi na wanyama ndani ya nyumba?

KITCHEN HYGIENE - USAFI JIKONI
Kwa kawaida, nyumba ina vyumba vingi. Chumba muhimu sana ni jikoni. Usafi jikoni ni muhimu sana kwa sababu sisi hupikia chakula katika chumba hiki.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Tutawezaje kuweka usafi jikoni? Kwanza ni lazima kufagia mara kwa mara ili kuzuia wadudu kama kunguni, mende na nzi. Pili weka madirisha ya kutosha. Madirisha huleta hewa safi na hewa safi ni nzuri kwa afya. Tatu ni bomba la moshi. Bomba la moshi husaidia sana kupunguza moshi jikoni. Njia ya nne ni kuosha vyombo kabla na baada ya kutumia na kupanga vizuri mahali pamoja na pa safi pia. Weka visu, vijiko na nyuma ndani ya mkebe ay kikombe safi. Njia ya mwisho ni kufunika chakula ili kuzuia vumbi na wadudu kama nzi na mende. Kama tutafuata njia hizi tutakuwa na jamii yenye afya.

MSAMIATI **VOCABULARY**

M - WA

Bomba la moshi	Chimney
Kunguni	Bed bugs
Nzi	Fly
Mende	Cockroaches

VERBS	
Kupanga	to arrange / to plan
Kuzuia	to prevent
Kufuata	to follow

M / MI

Mkebe	Mikebe
Mara kwa mara	Once in a while
Ili	So as

EXERCISE:

Translate the following sentences into Kiswahili:

1. To improve your kitchen you need to follow these steps:
   a) Sweep your house daily.
   b) Wash your utensils.
   c) Cover your food always.
   d) Keep your kitchen clean.
   e) Open the kitchen windows while cooking.

Cultural Note:

In some Kenyan communities, sweeping the house at night is discouraged as it is believed that this erodes the families wealth.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC: **PROPOSAL LETTER - BARUA YA MAPENDEKEZO**

COMPETENCY: **Be able to teach a group how to wirte a Poposal Letter - kuweza kufundisha kikundi jinsi ya kuandika barua ya mapendekezo.**

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE

PCV - Hamjambo mabibi na mabwana?	**PCV -** How are you ladies and gentlemen
Wanachama - Hatujambo. Na wewe?	**Wanachama** - We are fine and you?
PCV - Sijambo asanteni. Kwa sababu mna shida ya peasa za mradi wenu, leo nitawafunza jinsi ya kuandika barua ya mapendekezo.	**PCV -** Fine thank you. Because you have money problem with the project today am going to teach you on how to write a Proposal.
Mwanachama: - Barua ya mapendekezo ni nini?	**Wanachama** - What is a Proposal Letter.
PCV - Swali nzuri sana. Barua ya mapendekezo ni barua ambayo unaandika kwa shirika la mikopo ili kupata pesa za mradi.	**PCV** - Good question. A Proposal Letter is a letter that you write to a loan giving organization to get money for project.
Mwanachama - Barua hii unaandika vipi?	**Wanachama** - How do you write this letter?
PCV - Barua hii unafuata njia hizi kwa kuandika.	**PCV** - In writting this letter you will follow these steps:

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

1. Sababu za kutaka pesa. • Historia ya mradi (wanachama wangapi / uongozi, kikundi kimefanya kazi gani hapo awali). • Eleza kwanini unataka pesa. • Nani anahusika? • Kwanini mnataka mradi huu? **2. Lengo / Matarajio** • Eleza lengo la mradi • Eleza lengo la mradi • Eleza mradi utachukua mda gani? • Eleza ni nani atafaidika na atafaidika vipi? **3. Mpango wa Kazi:** • Eleza kazi • Mtu na kazi yake • Watu watahitaji vifaa gani na jinsi ya kuweka vifaa hivi. • Kama mradi unaleta faida • Eleza mpango wa kutafuta soko • Kupokea malipo na kuweka vitabu **4. MAKADIRIO:** • Onyesha kazi na vifaa vizuri vya kufanya kila kazi • Onyesha gharama ya kila kazi na kama gharama hii inafaa. • Onyesha mchango wa asili mia ishirini na tano (25%) wa kikundi. • Onyesha mchango wa kutoka pahali pengine **5. KUCHUNGUZA MRADI:** • Onyesha jinsi utachunguza kuendelea kwa mradi. • Onyesha ni nani atachunguza kuendelea kwa mradi • Eleza jinsi mradi utaendelea zaidi.	**1. Reason as to why you need money:** a) Back ground of the group (leadership). b) Previous activities of the group. c) Explain why you need the money d) Who is affected e) Why do you want this project. **2. Goals and Objectives:** a) Describe the goal of the project b) Describe the time bond c) Specify who are the benefiaries and how they will benefit. **3. Action Plan:** a) Define tasks. b) Person responsible for specific tasks d) Materials needed and how to store them. e) If the project is revenue-generating include plans for marketting, receiving payment and bookkeeping. **4. Cost - Break down / Budget:** a) Identify the tools necessary to carry out each task b) Demonstrate that costs of each task are reasonable. c) Show group contribution of 25% d) Show contribution from other sources. **5. Monitoring and Evaluating the Project:** a) I illustrate how you are going to monitor the project. b) Show who will be responsible for monitoring the Project. c) Show how the Project will continue beyond the implementation period.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

MSAMIATI		**VOCABULARY**
Mradi	(n)	Project
Barua	(n)	Letter
Shirika	(n)	Organization
Mkopo	(n)	Loan
Njia	(n)	Way / road / path
Historia	(n)	Background
Kikundi	(n)	Group
Wanachama	(n)	Members
Lengo	(n)	Aim / objective
Mpango	(n)	Plan
Vifaa	(n)	Tools / materials
Uongozi	(n)	Leadership
Faida	(n)	Profit / gain
Makadirio	(n)	Budget
Gharama	(n)	Cost
Mchango	(n)	Contribution
Asili mia	(n)	Percentage
Kuhusika	(v)	To be involved
Kuchukua	(v)	To take
Kufaidika	(v)	To benefit
Kupokea	(v)	To receive
Kuonyesha	(v)	To show
Kuchunguza	(v)	To monitor

EXERCISE:

1. Unandika barua ya mapendekezo kwa nani?
2. Barua ya mapendekezo ni nini?
3. Kuna hatua ngapi katika barua ya mapendekezo
4. Katika hatua ya kwanza unahitaji kuandika nini?
5. Katika hatua ya pili unahitaji kuandika nini?
6. Katika hatua ya tatu unahitaji kuandika nini?
7. Katika hatua ya inne na ya tano unahitaji kuandika nini?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC:: **WATER SUPPLY (PIPE LINE)**

COMPETENCY: **ENLIGHTEN THE COMMUNITY ON PIPED WATER SYSTEM**

PCV Scott visited Karate community and talked about piped water system.

Mjtoleaji Scott alitembelea wana kijiji wa Karate na wakaongea juu ya kusambaza maji kwa kutumia njia ya mifereji.

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE

PCV - Hamjambo mabibi na mabwana? **Kikundi** - Hatujambo.	**PCV -** Hallo! ladies and gentlemen?
PCV - Leo tutanzungumza juu ya shida ya maji.hapa . Mnapata maji wapi?	**Group** -Hallo PCV -Today we will talk about water problem where do you fetch water here?
Mwenyekiti - Kutoka kwa mto na chemichemi, lakini maji ya chemichemi ni safi na bora zaidi ingawa iko mbali kama kilomita mbili.	**Chair Person-** From a river and a spring but spring water is better although it's a bit far about 2 kms.
PCV -Tunaweza kutumia mifereji kuleta maji karibu labda kwa tanki kisha mnaweza kuchota hapo.	**PCV -** We can use pipes to bring water nearer may be in a tank then you can fetch from there.
Memba - Wazo nzuri lakini mifereji ni bei ghali sana.	**Member** -Good thinking but pipes are very expensive.
PCV - Kuna mifereji aina tofauti kama ya chuma (GI pipes) na miferji ya plastic (PVC). Mifereji ya plastik si bei ghali sana.	**PCV -** There are different types of pipes like steel (galvanised iron pipes) and plastic pipes (P.V.C.) plastic pipes aren't very expensive.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Karani - Tutahitaji mifereji mingapi? **PCV -** Tutahitaji kuona soroveya wa maji katika wizara ya maji. Soroveya atajua aina ya mifereji mingapi upana wa mfereji, watu wangapi wanatumia maji (customers) na mtatumia maji kwa njia gani? **Memba** - Unaweza kumleta soroveya wa maji hapa? **PCV -** Ndiyo, lakini ninapenda kuenda na wanachama wengine. **Memba** - Ninafikiri unaweza kuenda pamoja na mwenye kiti na karani. **PCV -**Asanteni sana ninafikiri tunaweza kuenda wiki ijayo ijumaa.	**Secretary** - How many pipes will we need? **PCV -** We'll need to see a water surveyor from the Ministry of Water. The surveyor will know the types of pipes, the diameter, how many people? and how you will use water. **Member** -Can you bring the surveyor here? **PCV** -Yes but I would like to go with some members. **Member -** I think you can go with the Chairperson and the secretary. **PCV -** Thank you very much we can go next week on Friday.

MSAMIATI	**MISAMIATI**	**ENGLISH**
N		
Shida	Shida	Problem(s)
Chemi chemi	Chemi Chemi	Spring(s)
Wizara	Wizara	Ministry
Njia	Njia	Way / method(s)
Wiki	Wiki	Week (s)
KI - VI		
Chuma	Vyuma	Steel(s)
M-WA		
Mwenyekiti	Chairperson	
Mwanachama	Member	
Karani	Secretary	
Soroveya	Surveyor	
ADVERB		
Bora	Better	
Tofauti	Different	

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ADJECTIVES

SAFI Ghali	Clean Expensive

EXERCISE 1: ZOEZI 1

MASWALI:

1. Watu wa Karate wanapata maji wapi?
2. Watu wa Karate wanapenda maji gani?
3. Kuna aina ngapi za mifereji?
4. Ikiwa unataka kumwona soroveya unahitaji kuenda wapi?
5. Soroveya atahitaji kujua nini kabla ya kuweka mifereji?

EXERCISE 2:

Kanusha sentence hizi - say in negatives

1. Watu wa Karate wanatumia maji ya chemichem
2. Wiki ijayo tutaenda kwa Afisi ya Wizara ya maji
3. Tutataka mifereji miwili.
4. Maji ya Chemichemi ni bora kwa afya
5. Tunaweza kununua mifereji ya chuma.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

TOPIC : IMPROVED STOVES

COMPETENCIES: INTRODUCE THE CONCEPT OF IMPROVED JIKOS AS A MEANS OF SOLVING RESPIRATORY PROBLEMS OF THE SHELTER USERS.

Scott **Mjitoleaji Scott alitembelea familia ya Wamasai wanaoishi katika Manyatta ambayo ina moshi na hakuwa hewa. Baada ya dakika chache, mjitoleaji Scott alianza kukohoa na kutoa machozi kwasababu ya moshi. Familia walianza kuwa na wasi wasi.**

MAZUNGUMZO - DIALOGUE:

Mama - Pole bwana Scott kwa moshi - tunaweza kuketi nje kwa sababu hapa ndani kuna moshi sana.	**Mama**: I am sorry for the smoke. We can sit outside because there is a lot of smoke in here.
Scott - Ndiyo bibi ninafikiri tunahitaji kuzungumza juu ya hii shida ya moshi.	**Scott:** Yes, I think we need to talk, about this problem of smoke.
Mama - Ninaweza kufanya nini ili kupunguza moshi ndani ya nyumba?	**Mama:** What can I do so as to reduce smoke inside the house.
Scott - Unahitaji kutumia Maendeleo Jiko (Improved Jiko). Pia unahitaji kuweka madirisha katika nyumba yako ili kupata hewa safi.	**Scott:** You need to use an Improved Jiko. You also need to put windows so that you get fresh air.
Mama - Sisi tumezoea moshi, kwa sababu nyumba zetu hazina madirisha.	**Mama:** We are used to smoke because our houses do not have windows.
Scott - Ikiwa utavuta moshi kwa muda mrefu unaweza kupata magonjwa ya kifua kama kukohoa. Pia unahitaji kuweka bomba la kutoa moshi nje.	**Scott:** If you get too much smoke for a long period of time you can get diseases such as coughing. You also need to put chimney to get out smoke.
Mama - Maendeleo jiko ni nini?	**Mama**: What is an Improved Jiko?
Scott- Maendeleo Jiko ni jiko la kisasa. Linatengenezwa kwa kutumia udongo , changarawe na maji. Pia watu wa jua kali wanaweza kukusaidia.	**Scott:** An Improved Jiko is a modern stove. It is made from clay, sand and water. The Jua Kali artisans can help you.
Mama - Maendeleo jiko lina umuhimu mwingine?	**Mama:** Does the Improved Jiko have another importance?

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Scott - Ndiyo jiko la aina hii inatumia kuni chache na ni njia safi ya kupika pia kwa sababu nyumba haitakuwa chafu. **Mama** - Asante sana, nitakuita kwa maswali zaidi.	**Scott:** Yes, it uses less firewood and it is a clean way of cooking because the house does not get dirty. **Mama**: Thank you very much. I will call you for more questions.

MSAMIATI	**MISAMIATI**	**VOCABULARY**
Moshi		Smoke
Nje		Out
Kwa sababu		Because
Ndani		Inside
Shida		problem
Nyumba		House
Jiko	Meko	Stove
Maendeleo		Development
Dirisha	Madirisha	Window
Safi		Clean
Ugonjwa	Magonjwa	Diseases
Kifua (V)		Chest
Bomba lla Moshi		Ventilation
Pia		Also
Hewa		Air
Udongo		Soil
Jiwe	Mawe	Stone
Maji		Water
Tumia		Use
Pata		To get
Hitaji		Need
Kuni		Fire Wood
Aina		Type
Chache		Few

EXERCISE ONE:

Andika sentenzi hizi kwa wingi. - Write in Plurals:

1. Ninahitaji kutumia Maendeleo Jiko
2. Nimezoea moshi
3. Anaweza kufanya nini ili kupunguza moshi.
4. Utavuta kwa muda mrefu

EXERCISE TWO:

Jibu Maswali haya: - Answer these questions:

1. Kwa nini mama alimwambia Scott watoke nje?
2. Maendeleo Jiko ni nini?
3. Kwa nini wamasai wanazoea moshi?
4. Maendeleo Jiko lina umuhimu gani?
5. Mama anaweza kufanya nini ili kupunguza moshi ndani ya nyumba.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ANSWERS

LESSON 1

ZOEZI I - EXERCISE I

1. Nzuri, Njema etc.
2. Nzuri, Njema, Salama etc.
3. Sijambo
4. Hatujambo
5. Nzuri, Njema etc.
6. Fiti
7. Poa, Fit, etc.
8. Marahaba.
9. Nzuri sana
10. Njema, Safi, Nzuri etc. Nzuri, Njema, Salama etc.

ZOEZI LA PILI - EXERCISE 2

A: Habari?
B: Nzuri.
A: Hujambo?
B: Sijambo.
A: Habari za Nyumbani?
B: Si Mbaya Nzuri, Salama.
A: Hamjambo?
Hatujambo.
A: Habari za kazi, watoto, shule, asubuhi etc?
B: Si mbaya.
A: Vipi mambo?
B: Poa, Fiti, Best
A: Kwaheri.
B: Kwaheri pia. Asante

ZOEZI III - EXERCISE III

1. Habari za asubuhi, jioni, kazi, etc?
2. Hamjambo?
3. Habari za watoto
4. Vipi bwana? Hujambo bwana, bibi?
   Habari za kazi, shule, nyumbani?
5. Hujambo bwana
6. Habari yako.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON TWO

EXERCISE I

1. Jina langu ni Ruth, Mary etc.
2. Anaitwa Peter, Jane etc.
3. Baba anaitwa Paulo, James etc.
4. Mama yangu anaitwa Patricia, Grace etc.
5. Ninatoka jimbo la California, Michigan etc.
6. Rafiki yangu anatoka nchi ya America, Kenya etc.

EXERCISE TWO:

1. Jina langu si Brian.
2. Siitwi Maria.
3. Hatutoki nchi ya Japani.
4. Hamtoki jimbo la California.
5. Hawatoki mji wa Nairobi.

EXERCISE THREE:

1. Jina lake ni nani?
2. Anatoka wapi?
3. Wajua Kiswahili?
4. Wanatoka wapi?
5. Unatoka mkoa wa magharibi?.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 3

INTRODUCTION II - KUJIJULISHA III

EXERCISE I

1. Ninakaa .....
2. Rafiki yangu anaitwa.
3. Kila asubuhi ninakuja shule kwa ...
4. Rafiki yangu anaenda nyumbani kwa...
5. Ndio / Hapana.
6. Tunakuja Malaika kwa ...
7. Katika Amerika ninakaa..
8. Wazazi wangu wanakaa.

EXERCISE II

1. Sikai Karate
2. Hatuendi Dukani.
3. Hatuendi Nyumbani
4. Hawarudi nyumbani kwa motokaa
5. Sikai kwa jamaa ya Joseph.
6. Kila asubuhi hatuji Malaika kwa basi.
7. Mary haishi Naivasha.
8. Mama haendi Kanisani.
9. Hatuendi Mombasa kwa gari la Moshi.
10. Hawaendi Kanisani kwa miguu.

LESSON 4

ZOEZI I (EXERCISE I)

1. Mimi ni (Mwalimu, mwnakilimo mseto, mshauri wa biashara ndogo ndogo) etc.

2. Ninaishi katika (Naivasha, Nairobi) etc.

3. Rafiki yangu anakaa (Mombasa) etc na yeye ni (mwalimu) etc.

ZOEZI LA PILI (EXERCISE 2)

1. Mimi si mwalimu
2. Wewe si mwanafunzi.
3. Yeye si mshauri wa biashara ndogo.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

4. Mimi sikai katika Naivasha.
5. Yeye hafundishi Hesabu.
6. Wewe hujifunzi Kiswahili.

ZOEZI LA TATU (EXERCISE 3)

1. Sisi ni walimu
2. Nyinyi ni wanafunzi.
3. Wao ni washauri wa biashara ndogo.
4. Sisi tunakaa katika Naivasha.
5. Wao wanafundisha Hesabu.
6. Nyinyi mnajifunza Kiswahili

LESSON 5:

EXERCISE ONE

1. Mama anapenda kula chapati na sukumawiki.
2. Nilikula yai moja la kuchemsha.
3. Tunapenda kula chapati, mboga, viazi.
4. Mama yangu hapendi kula nyama ya nguruwe
5. Baba hakula kitu alikunywa uji tu.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

EXERCISE TWO:

1. Jana nilikunywa maziwa.
2. Tulikula ugali jioni.
3. Alikunywa maji ya matunda.
4. Alikataa kula mkate bila siagi.
5. Wanafunzi hawakupenda chakula cha asubuhi.
6. Mtoto hakumaliza chakula.
7. Huli mayai asubuhi.
8. Hawanywi chai mchana.

EXERCISE THREE

1. Sipendi kunywa pombe.
2. Hawapendi kula githeri na ugali.
3. John hapendi kula wali na nyama.
4. Jana Ezekiel hakula viazi na nyama ya ngombe.
5. Jana mchana watoto hawakunywa maziwa.

LESSON 6

EXERCISE ONE

The answers to this exercise will vary from one person to another.

EXERCISE TWO:

1. Leo kuna chai, ugali etc. hotelini.
2. Chai ni shilingi kumi, ugali ni shilingi kumi na tano etc.
3. Sambusa mbili ni shilingi ishirini.
4. Ugali na samaki ni shilingi sitini.
5. Vikombe vitatu vya chai ni shilingi thelathini.
6. Hakuna viazi hotelini.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

EXERCISE THREE

1. Ameshiba
2. Amelewa
3. Amechoka
4. Amechelewa.
5. Amekasirika
6. Amefurahi

EXERCISE FOUR

1. Nimeshiba sana
2. Ninahitaji chakula
3. Alikuwa na kiu sana.
4. Alikunywa maji mengi.
5. Hakuwa na kiu sana.
6. Hakunywa chai leo asubuhi.
7. Ameshiba
8. Hali chakula.

LESSON 7

COOKING - UPISHI

EXERCISE 1

a) Usinywe chai, kahawa, etc.
b) Kula mayai, chakula etc.
c) Koroga mboga, chakula etc.
d) Chemsha maji, chai etc.
e) Katakata nyanya, kitunguu etc.,
f) Rudi nyumbani, shule kazi etc.
g) Nunua matunda, mboga etc.
h) Tumia kisu, kijiko, mwiko, etc.
i) Saidia mama, mwalimu, mtoto etc.
j) Osha mboga, chakula, vyombo etc.,

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

EXERCISE II

1. Osha mboga zote vizuri kabla ya kupika.
2. Tumia kiberiti kuwasha jiko.
3. Ni muhimu sana kuchemsha maji ya kunywa.
4. Tutapika wali na kuku.
5. Katakata vitunguu, weka kwa sufuria, ongeza mafuta na chumvi, halafu koroga kwa dakika chache.
6. Unaweza kula samaki na ugali.
7. Mama alimfunza Gina jinsi ya kupika chapati.
8. Kumbuka kununua mboga sokoni.
9. Nani atapika chakula cha jioni leo?
10. Jamaa yangu wanapika vizuri sana.

EXERCISE III

1. Usichemshe maji kabla ya kunywa.
2. Usinunue matunda yote sokoni.
3. Usikatakate vitunguu sasa.
4. Usile kabla ya kulala.
5. Baada ya kuamka usipige mswaki
6. Usisome vitabu vya kiswahili kila siku.
7. Msijaribu kusema kiswahili kila siku.
8. Msirudi darasani sasa.

LESSON 8

ZOEZI LA KWANZA (EXERCISE 1)

1. Ningependa kununua baiskeli.
2. Tungependa kusema kiswahili.
3. Angependa kukaa nyumbani wikendi hii.
4. Ningependa kulipa sasa.
5. Wangepanda kwenda sokoni.

ZOEZI LA PILI (EXERCISE 2)

1. Tungetaka kwenda Mombasa kwa basi.
2. Ningependa kula chapati na kuku.
3. Ningetaka kutembea karibu na ziwa Naivasha.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

4. Ningependa kupumzika baada ya shule
5. Ningependa Nairobi kununua nguo.

ZOEZI LA TATU (EXERCISE 3)

1. Singetaka kuishi katika Naivasha.
2. John hangetaka kuendesha baiskeli.
3. Hatungependa kusafiri kwa matatu.
4. Singependa kununua viatu na nguo leo.
5. John na Peter hawangetaka kusoma Kiswahili.
6. Singetaka kutembelea Peter kesho.

LESSON 9

EXERCISE ONE

1. We go to the market.
2. We visit our friend.
3. We go and see the children.
4. We cook food.
5. We go to sleep.
6. I go to Nairobi.
7. I stay here.
8. He/she reads what.

EXERCISE TWO

1. Usiende Nairobi kwa matatu
2. Usile chakula kibay.
3. Usitembee usiku.
4. Usinywe pombe / bia.
5. Usikimbie asubuhi.
6. Usilale hapa.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

EXERCISE THREE

1. Usivute sigara.
2. Usiendeshe gari.
3. Usipige picha.
4. Usinywe pombe.
5. Usiongelee.

EXERCISE FOUR

1. Rafiki yangu alinipa pesa
2. Baba yangu aliniona asubuhi.
3. Mwalimu ananifundisha kiswahili.
4. Kaka yake alimpa zawadi.
5. Walimpa chakula.

LESSON 10

EXERCISE ONE

1. Kakamega
2. Anaishi na wazazi wake.
3. Joe ana ndugu sita. Wao ni wanafunzi wa shule ya upili.
4. Shangazi wa Joe ni mwalimu na pia ni mfanyi biashara.
5. Wanapenda kuzungumza na wajukuu wao kwa sababu wanawapenda sana.
6. Dada wa Joe ana watoto wawili.

EXERCISE TWO:

1. Nina dada wawili na kaka mmoja.
2. Shangazi yangu ni mfanyi biashara.
3. Wazazi wake hawafanyi kazi.
4. Baba yake anaishi.
5. Dada yangu hajaolewa.
6. Kaka zangu wawili wadogo wanaenda shule.
7. Wazazi wao ni wakulima.
8. Babu yake alifariki mwaka uliopita.
9. Kaka yangu amemaliza chuo kikuu.
10. Mjomba yangu ni mgonjwa.

EXERCISE THREE:

1. Nina dada wawili.
2. Tuna shangazi mmoja.
3. Ana watoto wanne

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

4. Wana watoto tisa.
5. Familia ina watoto wasichana watatu.
6. Nina watoto wavulana watano.
7. Sina watoto wengi, nina watoto watatu.
8. Dada yake John ana watoto kumi.

LESSON 11

EXERCISE ONE

1. Mtangazaji
2. Hakimu
3. Askari polisi
4. Mekanika
5. Daktari
6. Muuguzi
7. Mpishi
8. Mvuvi
9. Seremala
10. Dobi
11. Fundi - stima
12. Hamali

EXERCISE TWO

1. Daktari
2. Wapishi
3. Wavuvi
4. Mwalimu
5. Anatengeneza vitu
6. Anaendesha gari, lori etc.
7. Rubani
8. Wafanyi biashara
9. Anaongoza nchi

EXERCISE THREE

1. Ambaye
2. Ambao
3. Ambao

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

4. Ambao
5. Ambacho
6. Ambayo
7. Ambayo

EXERCISE FOUR

1. Hiki ni kitabu nilichonunua juzi
2. Hawa ni wavulana wanaosema kiingereza.
3. Huu ni mkate uliopika?
4. Hii ni nyumba ninayopika rangi
5. Chukua matunda haya matatu niliyonunua wiki iliyopita.
6. Hiki ni chumba tulicholalia.
7. Hii ni miti tulipyopanda mwaka uliopita.
8. Nitakupa kitabu hiki ambacho nimemaliza tu kusoma.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 12

ZOEZI 1 - EXEDRCISE 1

1. Sam hulala saa tatu kila siku.
2. Kila mchana sisi hupumzika kwa saa moja.
3. Kwa kawaida Tom hucheza dansi kila wikendi
4. Kila jioni Simon hujifunza Kiswahili.
5. Kwa kawaida wao huenda Nairobi kila wikendi.

ZOEZI II - EXERCISE II

1. Walimu hufanya kazi mpaka saa kumi na nusu.
2. Kwa kawaida Evans hulala saa tano usiku.
3. Sasa ni saa mbili kasoro dakika ishirini na tano.
4. Katika Amerika George huanza kazi saa tatu asubuhi lakini katika Kenya yeye huanza saa mbili asubihi.
5. Kila siku David hupumzika saa kumi kamili.
6. Vijiji watu husema saa kwa kutumia asubuhi mchana, jioni na usiku.
7. Wajitoleaji wengi hufanya kazi nyingi kila siku.

ZOEZI III - EXERCISE III

1. Saa tatu kasorobo
2. Saa kumi na moja kamili.
3. Saa mbili kamili.
4. Saa kumi na mbili kamili.
5. Saa tatu kamili.

ZOEZI IV - EXERCISE IV

1. Kila siku Simon huamka saa kumi na mbili kamili.
2. Kila mchana Simon hurudi nyumbani saa sita kamili.
3. Kila jioni watoto hucheza mpira saa kumi na nusu.
4. Kila usiku Simon husoma vitabu saa mbili kamili usiku.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 13

The answers to exercise one and two are not definate. They depend on the time and day you are doing the exercise.

EXERCISE THREE

1. Sikuwa nikisoma
2. Sikuwa nikicheza.
3. Wanafunzi hawakuwa wakijifunza kiswahili.
4. Wazazi wangu hawakuwa wakiishi katika Newyork.

LESSON 14

ZOEZI 1 - EXERCISE 1

1. Ikiwa watu watakula mboga na matunda watakuwa na afya nzuri.
2. Watu wakisikia baridi wanaweza kupata mafua..
3. Unahitaji kuchemsha maji ya kunywa ili kuzuia magonjwa ya maji.
4. Ikiwa unahara ni lazima kunywa maji mengi.
5. Ikiwa viungo vyako vinauma unahitaji kumwona daktari.
6. Joe amepoteza hamu ya chakula.
7. Yule mgonjwa lazima kula matunda mengi.
8. Ikiwa watu hawatumii vyoo vyao vizuri watapata magonjwa mengi.
9. Ukinywa maji machafu utapata ugonjwa wa Homa Ya Matumbo.
10. Usiponawa mikono yako kabla ya kula utaumwa na tumbo.
11. Usile mavi tafadhali.

ZOEZI II - EXERCISE II

1. Kimani alipigwa na Otieno.
2. Mtoto wa jirani aliumwa na Nyoka.
3. Mtoto amepelekwa hospitali na mama.
4. Chakula kingi kilipikwa na wapishi.
5. Chumba cha wageni kilisafishwa na Alice
6. Maswali yote yalijibiwa na Ken.
7. Askari aliyeiba alisamehewa na mkubwa.
8. Mwizi yule alihukumiwa na hakimu.
9. Kitabu kipya kiliandikwa na walimu.
10. Chakula chote kilinunuliwa na mzungu.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

ZOEZI III - EXERCISE III

a)	Vidole	b)	Mguu	c)	Wayo
d)	Uso	e)	Sikio	f)	Mko
g)	Mgogo	h)	Paja	i)	Ulimi
j)	Kidevu	k)	Nywele	l)	Jicho
m)	Pua	n)	Midomo	o)	Meno

ZOEZI IV - EXERCISE IV

1.	Macho	2.	Masikio	3.	Miguu
4.	Matako	5.	Mikono	6.	Vidole
7.	Meno	8.	Pua	9.	Mikono
				10.	Vidole.

LESSON 16

1. Ni pesa ngapi kutoka Nairobi mpaka Mombasa?
2. Basi la kwanza litaondoka saa ngapi?
3. Basi litafika saa ngapi?
4. Ninataka tiketi moja tu.
5. Kuna viti kwa basi hili.
6. Ninataka kiti cha mbele.
7. Basi gani linaenda Nairobi?
8. Nani anauza tiketi

EXERCISE TWO

1. Shilingi mia nne
2. Saa kumi jioni
3. Saa mbili asubuhi
4. Shilingi mia tatu.
5. Huchukua masaa mawili.
6. Huondoka saa sita mchana na hufika saa kumi na moja jioni.

EXERCISE THREE

1. What is the return fare.
2. I would like to site next to the window.
3. How long does the matatu take from Nairobi to Naivasha.
4. The train has left.
5. I like traveling at night.
6. The bus is full there is no space.
7. I want to buy a ticket for two people.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

LESSON 17

EXERCISE THREE

Maria ni mtoto mwaminifu sana. Yeye ni mrefu na mwembamba, pia ni mwerevu. Juzi jioni Maria alichukua vitabu viwili, kimoja cheusi na kingine cheupe. Kitabu cheusi ni kikubwa kwa hiyo ni kizito lakini kitabu cheupe ni chepesi. Baada ya kuchukua vitabu Maria alikwenda baharini. Alipitia katika barabara nyembamba ambayo ina udongo nyekundu. Hakuogelea baharini kwasababu maji yalikuwa na rangi nyeusi.

LESSON 18:

EXERCISE II

Omolo:	1)	Shati
	2)	Kinyasa
	3)	Viatu.
Naomi:	1)	Skati
	2)	Bulausi
	3)	Soksi
Daudi	1)	Kofia
	2)	Koti
	3)	Tai
Mama	1)	Bangili
	2)	Vipuli
	3)	Ushanga
Wanjiru:	1)	Viatu
	2)	Rinda
	3)	Kamisi
Bakari:	1)	Kanzu
	2)	Chepeo
	3)	Viatu.

EXERCISE III

Andika nguo wanazovaa

Wanaume	**Wanawake**
1. Shati	1. Rinda
2. Suruali ndefu	2. Skati
3. Sweta	3. Bulausi
4. Soksi	4. Vipuli

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

5. Viatu
5. Mshipi

Siku za Baridi
1. Sweta
2. Suti, kofia
3. Koti

joto
1. Shati la mikono mifupi
2. Patipati
3. Fulana, Kikoi

LESSON 19

EXERCISE II - ZOEZI II

1. Ninataka chumba chenye choo na bafu.
2. Chumba hiki ni chenye baridi, sikipendi.
3. Simpendi chakula chenye chumvi.
4. Nyati ni wanyama wenye pembe refu.
5. Sipendi kukaa katika chumba chenye giza nyingi.
6. Mwenye nyumba ile alikufa mwaka uliopita.
7. Yule mzee mwenye mali alikuja jana.

ZOEZI III - EXERCISE III

(Examples of answers to this exercise could be ...)

1. Kitabu chenye hadithi ndefu ni changu.
2. Kalamu yenye wino imepotea
3. Duka lenye bidhaa nyingi ni ya mzee Jim.
4. Kijana mwenye elimu hupata kazi nzuri.
5. Mahali penye wazee hapaharibiki neno.
6. Ulimwengu wenye watu wengi una shida nyingi
7. Mtoto mwenye tabia mbaya hupigwa kila wakati.
8. Chungwa lenye maji mengi ni tamu sana.
9. Ukuta wenye mawe mengi hauwezi kuanguka.

ZOEZI IV - EXERCISE IV

1. Wanafunzi wenyewe ni watukutu.
2. Vikombe vyenyewe vilivunjika jana.
3. Nyamba zenyewe zimejaa wageni.
4. Matunda yenyewe yameoza.
5. Mkate yenyewe imeungua.
6. Miti nenyewe imekauka.

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

7. Matanki yenyewe yamejaa maji.
8. Wasichana wenyewe ni warembo sana.

GLOSSARY:

SWAHILI		ENGLISH
Agiza	(V)	Order
Anza	(v)	Start, begin
Arobaini	(Adj)	Fourty
Asante		Thank you
Asubuhi		Morning
Baada ya	(Adv)	After
Baba	(N)	Father
Baiskeli	(N)	Bicycle
Bakuli	(N)	Bowl
Baya	(Adj)	Bad
Bei	(N)	Price
Biashara	(N)	Business
Bibi	(N)	Madamme, lady
Bili	(N)	Bill
Bonde la ufa		Rift Valley
Bwana	(N)	Mister, gentleman
Chai	(N)	Tea
Chakula	(N)	Food
Changanya	(N) (V)	Mix
Chapati	(N)	Chapati
Chemsha	(V)	Boil
Chukua	(N)	Take
Chumvi	(N)	Salt
Chungwa	(N)	Orange
Dakika	(N)	Minute
Darasa	(N)	Class
Dogo	(Adj)	Small
Elfu moja	(Adj)	One Thousand
Enda	(V)	Go
Fanya	(V)	Do
Fiti	(V)	Fit, fine
Fundisha	(Adj)	Teach
Funika	(V)	Cover
Gani	-	Which
Habari	(N)	News
Halafu	-	Then
Hamsini	(Adj)	Fifty
Hapa		Here
Hesabu	(N)	Maths
Ikiwa	-	If

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

SWAHILI		ENGLISH
Ishi	(V)	Live, dwell
Ishirini	(Adj)	Twenty
itwa	(V)	Called
Iva	(V)	Be cooked, ripe
Jifunza	(V)	Learn
jimbo	(N)	State
jina	(N)	Name
Jioni	-	Evening
Jua	(V)	Know (v) sun (n)
jua	(V)	Know (V) sun (N)
Kaa	(V)	Stay
Kabichi	(N)	Cabbage
Kahawa	(N)	Coffee
Kanisa	(N)	Church
Karatasi	(N)	Paper
Karoti	(N)	Carrot
Kaskazini mashariki		North Eastern
Katakata	(V)	Cut, slice, chop
Kati		Central
Kausha	(V)	Dry
Kazi	(N)	Job, work
Kiazi	(N)	Potato
Kiberiti	(N)	Matches
Kiingereza	(N)	English
Kijiko	(N)	Spoon
Kikombe	(N)	Cup
Kila		Every
Kinywaji	(N)	Drink
Kisha		Then
Kisu	(N)	Knife
Koroga	(V)	Stir
Kuja	(V)	Come
Kuku	(N)	Chicken
Kula	(V)	To eat
Kunywa	(V)	To drink
Kupa	(V)	To give
kwaheri	-	Goodbye
Leta	(V)	Bring
Lipa	(V)	Pay
Mafuta	(N)	Oil
Magharibi	-	Western
Maji	(N)	Water
Makaa	(N)	Charcoal
Mashariki	-	Eastern
Maziwa	(N)	Milk
Mbili	(Adj)	Two
Mchana		Noun, day time
Mchele	(N)	Rice
Milioni Moja	(Adj)	One million
Mkamba	(N)	A Kamba
Mkate	(N)	Bread

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Mkikuyu	(N)	A Kikuyu
Mkoa		Province
Mluhya	(N)	A Luhya
Mluo	(N)	A Luo
Moja	(Adj)	One
Mwalimu	(N)	Teacher
Mwanafunzi	(N)	Student
Mwiko	(N)	Wooden spoon
Mzee	(N)	Old man
Ndururu	(N)	Five Cents
Ngapi		How many
Ngoja	(V)	Walk
Nne	(Adj)	Four
Noti	(N)	Note
Nyama	(N)	Meat
Nyama ya kondoo	(N)	Mutton
Nyama ya mbuzi	(N)	Goat meat
Nyama ya ngombe	(N)	Beef
Nyama ya nguruwe		Pork
Ongeza	(V)	Add, increase
Ongeza	(V)	Add
Onja	(V)	Taste
Osha	(V)	Wash
Pakua	(V)	Serve
Pale	-	There
Peni	(N)	Ten Cent
Pesa	(N)	Money
Pia		Also,m too
Pika	(V)	Cook
Poa	(Adj)	Cool, calm
Pombe	(v)	Beer
Ponda ponda	(V)	Mash
Punguza	(V)	Reduce
Pwani	-	Coast
Rahisi	(Adj)	Cheap
Rudi	(V)	Return
Saba	(Adj)	Seven
Sabini	(Adj)	Seventy
Safisha	(V)	Clean
Saidia	(V)	Help
Salama	(Adj)	Fine, good, peaceful
Samaki	(N)	Fish
Sasa	-	Now
Sawasawa	(Adj)	Okey
Sema	(V)	Say
Shilingi	(N)	Shilling
Shule	(N)	School
Siagi	(N)	Butter
Siku	(N)	Day
Sita	(Adj)	Six
Sitini	(Adj)	Sixty
Soda	(N)	Soda
Sukari	(N)	Sugar

Hosted for free on livelingua.com

Sukumawiki	(N)	Greens
Sumni (N)		Fifty
Taka	(V)	Want
Tatu	(Adj)	Three
Thamanini	(Adj)	Eighty
Thelathini	(Adj)	Thirty
Tia	(V)	Put into
Tisa	(Adj)	Nine
Tisini	(Adj)	Ninety
Toka	(V)	Come from
Tumia	(V)	Use
Tunda	(N)	Fruit
Ugali	(N)	Ugali
Uji	(N)	Porridge
Uma	(N)	Fork
Unga	(N)	Flour
Vipi	-	How
Washa (V)		Light (V)
Weka	(V)	Put
Weza	(V)	Be able, can
Yai	(N)	Egg
Zuri	(Adj)	Good

Hosted for free on livelingua.com